Министерство образования и науки Российской Федерации

Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение высшего профессионального образования «Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет»

Е. Ю. Першина

ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА. ГЛАГОЛЬНЫЕ ФОРМЫ И СИНТАКСИС

Утверждено в качестве учебного пособия Учёным советом Федерального государственного бюджетного образовательного учреждения высшего профессионального образования «Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет» УДК 811.111(07) ББК 81.2Англ-9 П279

Рецензенты:

Кафедра иностранных языков Института педагогики и психологии ФГБОУ ВПО «Амурский гуманитарно-педагогический государственный университет», заведующая кафедрой кандидат филологических наук, доцент И. Б. Косицына;

К. В. Боровикова, кандидат филологических наук, доцент, декан факультета филологии и межкультурной коммуникации ФГБОУ ВПО «Амурский гуманитарно-педагогический государственный университет»

Першина, Е. Ю.

П279 Практическая грамматика английского языка. Глагольные формы и синтаксис : учеб. пособие / Е. Ю. Першина. – Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ФГБОУ ВПО «КнАГТУ», 2015. – 169 с. ISBN 978-5-7765-1157-8

Главная цель учебного пособия — способствовать овладению знаниями английской грамматики и развитию навыков перевода аутентичных профессионально-ориентированных текстов.

В учебное пособие включены грамматические и лексические упражнения, направленные на формирование и развитие навыков перевода, закрепление профессиональной лексики, лексико-грамматический материал для самоконтроля и самопроверки.

Предназначено для студентов, обучающихся по направлению «Переводчик в профессиональной сфере», и представляет собой сборник теоретического материала и упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Рекомендуется к использованию всеми, кто изучает грамматику английского языка.

УДК 811.111(07) ББК 81.2Англ-9

ISBN 978-5-7765-1157-8

© ФГБОУ ВПО «Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет», 2015

CONTENTS

ВВЕДЕНИЕ	5
ТЕМА 1. ПАССИВНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ (THE PASSIVE VOICE)	5
1.1. Времена неопределенной группы (the Indefinite	
Tenses) [to be $+ V3(ed)$]	5
1.2. Времена продленной группы (the Continuous Tenses)	
[to be being + V3(ed)]	11
1.3. Времена завершенной группы (the Perfect Tenses)	
[to have been + V3(ed)]	
ТЕМА 2. МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ (THE MODAL VERBS)	21
2.1. Образование отрицательных и вопросительных форм	22
2.2. Can (could) = to be able to	22
2.3. May (might) = to be allowed to	23
2.4. Must = to be to, to have to	25
2.5. Should, ought to	27
2.6. Need	29
2.7. Употребление модальных глаголов в сочетании	
с инфинитивом пассивного залога	31
2.8. Употребление модальных глаголов в сочетании	
с перфектным инфинитивом	
ТЕМА 3. ПРИЧАСТИЕ (THE PARTICIPLE)	
3.1. Способы образования причастия	
3.2. Функции причастия	40
3.3. Независимый причастный оборот (The Absolute	
Participle Construction)	54
3.4. Абсолютный причастный оборот с предлогом	
(The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction)	57
3.5. Объектный причастный оборот с причастием	
настоящего времени (The Object Participial	
Construction with Participle I)	57
3.6. Субъектный причастный оборот (The Subjective	
Participial Construction)	58
3.7. Объектный причастный оборот с причастием	
прошедшего времени (The Object Participial	
Construction with Participle II)	
TEMA 4. ГЕРУНДИЙ (THE GERUND)	
4.1. Способы образование герундия	
4.2. Функции герундия	
4.3. Сложные формы герундия	
4.4. Герундиальный оборот (The Gerundial Construction)	
4.5. Сравнение герундия и причастия	73

ТЕМА 5. ОТГЛАГОЛЬНОЕ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ	
(THE VERBAL NOUN)	78
TEMA 6. ИНФИНИТИВ (THE INFINITIVE)	
6.1. Способы образования инфинитива	82
6.2. Функции инфинитива в предложении	
6.3. Употребление инфинитива без частицы 'to'	
6.4. Объектный инфинитивный оборот (The Objective In	
Construction)	
6.5. Субъектный инфинитивный оборот (The Subjective	
Construction)	95
6.6. Инфинитивный оборот $for + существительное$	
(местоимение) (for + to – Infinitive Construction)	100
ТЕМА 7. ПОВЕЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ	
(THE IMPERATIVE MOOD)	110
ТЕМА 8. СОСЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ	
(THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD)	112
ТЕМА 9. ВОПРОСИТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ	
(INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES)	116
TEMA 10. УСЛОВНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ (CONDITIONAL	
SENTENCES)	126
ТЕМА 11. СЛОВООБРАЗОВАНИЕ	135
11.1. Словообразовательные суффиксы глаголов	135
11.2. Словообразовательные префиксы	138
11.3. Интернациональная лексика	141
ТЕМА 12. ФРАЗОВЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ	143
ТЕМА 13. ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ	
(THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE)	146
TESTS	149
KEYS TO TESTS	166
ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ	
БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК	168

ВВЕДЕНИЕ

Данное учебное пособие является продолжением путешествия в удивительный мир английской грамматики. Она состоит из 13 тем. Здесь вы познакомитесь и с модальными глаголами английского языка, и с неличными формами английского глагола; узнаете, что такое герундий, ведь ему нет аналогов ни в одном языке мира; научитесь задавать вопросы и высказывать удивление или сомнение. Другими словами, вы научитесь грамотно изъясняться на изучаемом языке.

В учебное пособие включены лексические и грамматические упражнения на развитие и закрепление навыков перевода с английского языка на русский, а также с русского языка на английский и закрепление специальной лексики.

Упражнения, входящие в учебное пособие, способствуют лучшему усвоению и закреплению грамматического и лексического материала.

Удачи и успехов в овладении английским языком!

TEMA 1. ПАССИВНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ (THE PASSIVE VOICE)

Пассивный залог показывает, что подлежащее пассивно, т.е. оно подвергается воздействию со стороны другого лица или предмета.

Пассивный залог широко употребляется для научных описаний, для описаний технических процессов, в отчетах, объявлениях и т.д.

1.1. Времена неопределенной группы (the Indefinite Tenses) [to be + V3(ed)]

Пассивный залог времен группы Indefinite образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** в соответствующем времени Indefinite и 3-й формы смыслового глагола (Participle II). Показателем времени, лица и числа является вспомогательный глагол **to be**. Смысловой глагол не изменяется:

The ships are made of steel. — Эти суда делаются (изготовляются) из стали.

The ships were made of steel. — Эти суда были изготовлены из стали. The ships will be made of steel. — Эти суда будут изготовлены из стали.

В отрицательной форме отрицание **not** ставится после глагола **to be**. При наличии двух вспомогательных глаголов отрицание **not** ставится после первого глагола:

The ships are made of steel. – The ships are not made of ore.

The ships will be built in the yard. — The ships will not be built in port.

В вопросительной форме глагол **to be** ставится перед подлежащим. При наличии двух вспомогательных глаголов в вопросительной форме перед подлежащим ставится первый вспомогательный глагол:

The ships are made of steel. – Are the ships made of steel?

The ships will be built in the yard. – Will the ships be built in the yard?

Сказуемое в пассивном залоге переводится:

1. сочетанием глагола **быть** (в прошедшем и будущем времени) и краткой формой причастия пассивного залога:

The ships were made ... – Эти суда были изготовлены ... The ships will be made ... – Эти суда будут изготовлены ...

Глагол-связка быть в настоящем времени в русском языке опускается:

The ships are made ... – Эти суда делаются ...

2. возвратным глаголом с окончанием -ся, -сь:

The ships will be built here. – Здесь будут строиться суда.

3. неопределенно-личной формой глагола (3-е лицо множественного числа):

The ships were built a week ago. – Эти суда построили неделю назад.

4. глаголом в активном залоге, если в предложении говорится о лице или предмете, воздействующем на подлежащее, которое выражено существительным (или местоимением) с предлогом **by**. Причем это лицо или предмет становится подлежащим русского предложения:

The design of the ship was changed **by** the engineer. — **Инженер** изменил проект судна.

Подлежащее в пассивном залоге переводится:

1. существительным (или местоимением) в именительном падеже и во всех косвенных падежах:

It was built in the yard. — **Он (им.п.)** был построен на верфи.

It was seen in the port of London. – **Его (вин. п.)** видели в порту Лондона.

It was given the name of Peter the Great. — **Ему (дат. п.)** дали имя Петр Великий.

2. существительным (или местоимением) с предлогом, который ставится перед ним, если за сказуемым в пассивном залоге следует предлог, относящийся к глаголу:

The design of the ship was much worked at. — $Ha\partial$ проектом этого судна много работали.

Такие пассивные обороты возможны только с некоторыми глаголами. Наиболее употребительные из них:

```
to act on (upon) — влиять, воздействовать на;

to deal with — иметь дело с, рассматривать;

to experiment on (upon) — экспериментировать над;

to insist on — настаивать на;

to look at — смотреть на;

to refer to — ссылаться на;

to rely on (upon) — полагаться на;

to send for — посылать за;

to speak about (of) — говорить о;

to work at — работать над.

У некоторых глаголов предлог не переводится:

to comment on (upon) — комментировать, рецензировать;

to listen to — слушать;

to look for — искать;

to look upon — считать, рассматривать.
```

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences and compare their translations.

- 1. The director *signed* the letter. The letter *was signed* by the director.
- 2. The scientists *solved* the problem. The problem *was solved* by the scientists.
- 3. The secretary *types* all the letters. All the letters *are typed* by the secretary.
- 4. The teacher usually *corrects* students' compositions at home. Students' compositions *are* usually *corrected* by the teacher at home.
- 5. They *will discuss* a very important question at the conference. A very important question *will be discussed* at the conference.
- 6. Our Institute *will carry on* important scientific work. Important scientific work *will be carried on* by our Institute.
- 7. The engineer *showed* the new device to the students. The new device *was shown* to the students.

The students were shown the new device.

- 8. This magazine often *publishes* scientific articles. Scientific articles *are* often *published* in this magazine.
- 9. The professor *gave* me a new task.

A new task was given to me by the professor.

I was given a new task by the professor.

10. They *will offer* him several jobs. Several jobs *will be offered* to him. He *will be offered* several jobs.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences paying attention to the predicates in the Indefinite Passive.

- 1. Many interesting experiments are carried out in our laboratory.
- 2. The other day I was given a new task.
- 3. He was never forgiven by his friends.
- 4. Many goods are exported from China.
- 5. Many foreign books are translated and published in our country.
- 6. The telegram was received late at night.
- 7. The design was finally approved.
- 8. The theatre was designed by the famous architect.
- 9. The student's composition will be corrected by the teacher.
- 10. Large quantities of coal will be produced by the mine this year.
- 11. The village will be connected with the town when the railway is built.
- 12. She hopes she will not be refused a job.
- 13. I was offered several jobs by the management.
- 14. You will be promised much, but don't imagine you will be given everything you are promised.
 - 15. The students were shown some recently devised apparatus.
 - 16. Were you asked questions during the examination?
 - 17. They were given necessary help.
 - 18. The article is written by a well-known scientist.
 - 19. The letter will be signed by the director.
 - 20. Such questions are often discussed at our meetings.

Ex. 3. Put the sentences into the Passive Voice where possible.

1.	Someone will drive you to the airport. –
2.	Goldfish live in fresh water. –
3.	The Egyptians built pyramids. –
4.	We walked 4 miles yesterday. –
5.	They arrived at 7 last night. –
6.	They informed me about it. –
7.	I slept till 8. –
8.	It's raining. –
9.	He's sneezing again. –
10.	They have sold their car to pay the debts. –
11.	They hold a meeting in the village hall once a week. –

	13.	They owe a lot of money to the bank. –
	Ex	. 4. Translate the sentences paying attention to the predicates with
prepa	sitio	ons.
	1.	His proposal was objected to by everybody.
	2.	The secretary must be sent for at once.
	3.	This information can be relied on.
		This article is often referred to.
		He will be listened to with interest.
		This event is much spoken about.
		He is often laughed at.
		This book should be referred to more often.
		This matter must be looked into.
		All the advertisements were looked through attentively.
		These conditions are insisted on.
		All the terms were agreed upon.
		Her children will be looked after.
		They were looked at with great curiosity.
		The child was looked for everywhere.
		Why was she laughed at?
		He can be relied upon.
		This book is never referred to.
		This film is much spoken about.
		This question is paid great attention to.
		You are always waited for.
		The fact was not taken notice of.
		This material will be made use of.
		The shildren should be taken better and to.
	23.	The children should be taken better care of.
	Ex	. 5. Put the sentences into the Passive.
		The president signed the document. –
		An unknown author wrote the poem. –
		1
	3.	They construct a new railway line across the desert. –
	4.	They will plant the flowers next week. –
	5.	This plant produces a lot of cars every year. –
	6	The student translated the text. –

7.	The scientist di	scovered a n	ew substanc	e. –
	The secretary of	sands letters	every morn	ing. –
σ.	The secretary s	schus icucis	every morn	mg
9.	The committee	discusses v	arious quest	ions. –
10.	The engineer w	zill check all	the devices	. –
11.	The reporter w	ill give nece	essary inforn	nation. –
12.	He said that th	ey would tes	st the equipm	nent in time. –
13	They paid him	regularly –		
		• •	h and Germ	nan. –
				
15.	They promised	me a very i	nteresting be	ook. –
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Ex.	6. Translate in	to English.	Use the mod	el.
Mod	del:		told	
		•	given	
	smb	•	offered	smth
		will be	promised shown	
	Мне показали,			
	Ей пообещали		-	
	Ему дали ново В отеле вам бу	,	_	кин —
	B ofesic bain of	дут давать	Subipuk ii yi	
5.	Вам покажут з	ту статью.		
6.	Никаких объяс	снений мне	не дали. – _	
7.	Эту работу дал	ти кому-то д	цругому	
8.	Новая модель	была показ	ана на выст	авке. —
9.	Нам картину н	е показали.	_	
10.	Мне даже нич	его не обещ	али. –	
11.	Когда вам рас	сказали эту	историю? –	
12.	Вам показали	этот каталоі	r? –	
				?

14. Почему мне предложили эту работу? –	
15. Почему нам этого не сказали? –	
16. Когда будет показан этот фильм? –	
17. Почему мне не дали словаря в библиотеке? –	
18. Каждому студенту дадут стипендию	
Ex. 7. Complete the story with the verbs in passive given in the b were injured, were delayed, was derailed, were taken, have been inter-	
TRAIN CRASH AT 80 MPH	
The London-Edinburgh express yesterday morn	ning as it
was passing through York station. Ten people and f	our peo-
ple to hospital, but no one was seriously hurt	Trains
for the rest of the day. Several eye witnesses	
	,
but it is not yet clear how the crash happened.	
1.2. Времена продленной группы (the Continuous Ter [to be being + V3(ed)]	ises)

Пассивный залог времен группы Continuous образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** в Present или Past Continuous и 3-й формы (Participle II) смыслового глагола и переводится по общим правилам перевода глагола в пассивном залоге, но глаголом несовершенного вида:

The ships were being built during three years. — Эти корабли строили в течение трех лет.

Формы Future Continuous Passive не существует.

Тренировочные упражнения [1, с. 303]

Ex. 8. Compare the translation of the sentences.

- 1. They *are designing* a new device now. A new device *is being designed* now.
- 2. The workers *are unloading* the ship. The ship *is being unloaded*.
- 3. All the big cinemas *are demonstrating* the new film. The new film *is being demonstrated* by all the big cinemas.
- 4. Our laboratory *is carrying on* an important experiment now. An important experiment *is being carried on* by our laboratory.

- 5. We *are analyzing* the experimental data. The experimental data *are being analyzed*.
- 6. We were making preparations for the experiment for a whole day yesterday.

Preparations for the experiment *were being made* for a whole day yesterday.

7. The engineer was checking the equipment when it suddenly broke down.

The equipment was being checked by the engineer when it suddenly broke down.

- 8. They were recording the data for 2 hours. The data were being recorded for 2 hours.
- 9. When I rang them up they *were adjusting* new machine-tools. When I rang up the new machine-tools *were being adjusted*.

Ex. 9. Find the difference between these sentences.

- 1. Many important questions *are* usually *discussed* at our meetings. Many important questions *are being discussed* at the meeting now.
- 2. The goods *were packed* yesterday. The goods *were being packed* all day yesterday.
- 3. The documents *are* usually *looked through* by the director. The documents *are being looked through* by the director now.
- 4. This kind of machinery *is produced* by our plant. This kind of machinery *is being produced* by our plant.
- 5. The talks *were conducted* on a high level. The talks *were being conducted* for 2 weeks.
- 6. The agreement *was signed* yesterday.

 The agreement *was being signed* when new problems appeared.

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences with the Continuous Passive.

- 1. A new metro line is being constructed now. One of its stations is being built in our street.
 - 2. Wonderful discoveries are being made by our scientists.
 - 3. Don't enter the room! Students are being examined there.
- 4. The question which is being discussed at the conference is very important.
 - 5. Important scientific work is being carried on by that Institute now.
 - 6. The letter was being typed by the typist when I came in.
 - 7. The documents were being checked for two hours.
- 8. When he came to the clinic, an operation was being performed by a famous surgeon.
 - 9. The operation was being watched by medical students.
 - 10. These books were being published for a whole year.

EX	. 11. Change the active sentences to the passive ones.
1.	The head engineer is conducting negotiations. –
2.	The laboratory assistant is making all the necessary measurements
3.	The workers are installing various apparatus and devices. –
4.	We are preparing instruments. –
5.	The computer is processing the data. –
6.	They were building the house for 5 years. –
7.	The device was making computations at that moment. –
8.	They were registering the voters from 3 to 5 yesterday. –
9.	When we entered the room they were checking the contract. –
10	The specialists were studying new materials for many years. –

1.3. Времена завершенной группы (the Perfect Tenses) [to have been + V3(ed)]

Пассивный залог времен группы Perfect образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** в соответствующем времени Perfect и 3-й формы (Participle II) смыслового глагола.

Пассивный залог времен группы Perfect переводится по общим правилам перевода глагола в пассивном залоге:

The goods had been delivered before the navigation ended. — Товары были доставлены прежде, чем закончилась навигация.

Времена группы **Perfect Continuous** не имеют формы пассивного залога. В табл. 1.1 представлены времена пассивного залога на примере правильного глагола to ask — asked — asked (спрашивать) и неправильного глагола to take — took — taken (брать).

Таблица 1.1 Времена пассивного залога (Passive Voice Tenses)

Группа	Present	Past	Future
	am + V3(ed)	was + V3(ed)	will be + V3(ed)
	are + V3(ed)	were $+ V3(ed)$	
Indefinite	is + V3(ed)		
fin	The student is asked.	The student was	
lde	Студента спрашивают.	asked.	asked.
I		Студента спросили.	Студента спросят.
	The books <i>are taken</i> .	The books <i>were taken</i> .	
	Книги берут(ся).	Книги были взяты.	Книги возьмут.
	am being + V3(ed)	was being + V3(ed)	
	are being + V3(ed)	were being + V3(ed)	
Ø	is being + V3(ed)		
no!	The student is being	The student was be-	
ii.	asked.	ing asked.	
Continuous	Студента спрашивают.	Студента спрашива-	
ŭ		πu .	
	The books are being	The books were be-	
	taken.	ing taken.	
	Книги берут(ся).	Книги брали.	•11 1
	have been + V3(ed)	had been + V3(ed)	will have been +
	has been + V3(ed)	TP1	+ V3(ed)
Perfect	The student has been	The student had been	The student will have
	asked.	asked.	been asked.
	Студента спросили.	Студент был опро-	Студента спросят.
<u> </u>	The bester house here.	шен. Тыр Тарабар Тарабар	The bester will bound
	The books have been		
	taken.	taken.	been taken.
	Книги взяли.	Книги были взяты.	Книги возьмут.

Тренировочные упражнения [2, с. 441]

Ex. 12. Compare the translation of the sentences.

- 1. We have finished the work. The work has been finished.
- 2. He *has written* a new book. A new book *has been written* by him.

- 3. They have changed their plans. Their plans have been changed.
- 4. They *had installed* the new apparatus by yesterday evening. The new apparatus *had been installed* by yesterday evening.
- 5. They *had reequipped* the plant before the reconstruction began. The plant *had been reequipped* before the reconstruction began.
- 6. The group *will have carried out* the plan by next summer. The plan *will have been carried out* by next summer.
- 7. They *will have made* necessary calculations before the experiment begins.

Necessary calculations *will have been made* before the experiment begins.

- 8. The workers *have built* a new house. A new house *has been built* by workers.
- 9. The workers *had built* a new house by last month. A new house *had been built* by the workers by last month.
- 10. The workers *will have built* a new house by next month. A new house *will have been built* by workers by next month.
- 11. They *have offered* him an interesting job. He *has been offered* an interesting job. An interesting job *has been offered* to him.
- 12. They *have shown* us all necessary documents. We *have been shown* all necessary documents. All necessary documents *have been shown* to us.

Ex. 13. Find the difference between these sentences.

- 1. The experiment *was completed* a month ago. The experiment *had been completed* by last month.
- 2. Her plans *are changed* every day. Her plans *have been* already *changed*.
- 3. The explanation of this fact *was given* long ago. The explanation of this fact *hasn't been given* yet.
- 4. This book *is written* by a famous scientist. Many new books *have been written* by this scientist lately.
- 5. The text *will be translated* tomorrow. The text *will have been translated* by tomorrow.
- 6. The theory *was developed* in 1920. The theory *has been* just *developed*.
- 7. New theories *are developed* very often. New theories *have been developed* by our team.
- 8. The documents *are* usually *signed* in the morning. The documents *are being signed*. The documents *have been signed*.

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences in the Perfect Passive.

- 1. Our room has been papered lately.
- 2. The house was built in place of the old one that had been destroyed by fire.
 - 3. He shows much better results since he has been trained by this coach.
 - 4. All the business letters will have been signed by noon.
 - 5. No objections to the plan have been offered so far.
 - 6. I have never been spoken to in such a way.
- 7. The event had been reported by the newspapers before the investigation began.
 - 8. Some new journals have been just brought.
 - 9. The work will have been completed by the end of the year.
 - 10. All the students had been examined by 5 o'clock.
- 11. When the director came everything was ready: the documents had been checked and the letters had been typed.
 - 12. When you rang us up the work had been already finished.
- 13. When you come the documents will have been checked and the letters will have been typed.
 - 14. The equipment will have been delivered by next month.
 - 15. The article will have been written by tomorrow.
- 16. At the publishing house I was told that the book would have been published by the end of the year.
 - 17. I was sure that the letter would have been registered by Monday.
 - 18. I was told that the machines would have been ordered by next year.
 - 19. He said that the work would have been done by the appointed time.
- 20. It was evident that the talks would have been finished before the arrival of the commission.

Ex. 15. Change the active sentences to the passive ones.

1.	We have obtained necessary results. –
2.	They have determined the main properties of the substance. –
3.	He has done everything properly. –
4.	They had carried out the plan by last week. –
5.	They had solved all the problems by the beginning of the negotiations. –
6.	He had presented the report before the conference began. –
7.	We will have recorded the data by 5 o'clock. –

8. They will have checked the devices by tomorrow. –
9. He will have tested the equipment before it starts working. –
10. He said that he would have prepared instruments by the following month. –
Обзорные упражнения
Ex. 16. Complete the text with the passive form of the verbs. Use the Present Simple, Past Simple, or Present Perfect.
Concorde, the world's fastest passenger plane, (to develop) by France and Britain together. In the 1950s, both countries dreamed of having a supersonic plane and the project (to start) in 1962. £1.5 billion (to spend) on developing Concorde and it (to test) for over 5 000 hours, which makes it the most tested plane in history. The first passenger plane (to introduce) by British Airways and Air France in 1976. Concorde holds many world records, including the fastest crossing of the Atlantic from New York to London, which (to achieve) in 2 hours 45 seconds! Flying at twice the speed of sound means that flying time (to reduce) by half, which is why the Concorde flight between London and New York (to use) a lot by business people and film stars – you can leave Britain at 10.30 and arrive in New York an hour earlier! Twenty planes (to build) up to the present day. But there are no plans to build any more. Each plane (to produce) at a cost of £55 million, which makes them very expensive!
Ex. 17. Correct the sentences, making them negative. Madel: Paper is made from plastic — Paper isn't made from plastic.
Model: Paper is made from plastic. – Paper isn't made from plastic. It's made from wood.
1. President Kennedy was killed in New York
2. Walkman cassette players were developed by the Russians. –
3. The Berlin Wall was knocked down in 1982. –
4. The 2000 Olympic Games were held in New Zealand. –
5. Rolls-Royce cars are made in Japan. –

7. Coffee is grown in Scotland. –
8. 'Sunflowers' was painted by Renoir. –
1 J
 Ex. 18. Supply the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets. 1. Meg (to look) upon as a perfect wife for a clergyman. 2. After his brother's departure Paul sat for long time thinking about
what (to say)
3. "I'm not prepared," my father said, "to listen to your suggestions that
you never (to treat) fairly at school."
4. "Remember I (to pay) by an hour," grumbled the driver
5. But there were signs that order (to restore) in the town
6. Well, what (to do) about it, Ted?
7. He went into the bedroom. The bed <i>(to turn)</i> down fo
the night by the maid many hours before.
8. Please find out if our father (to see) to leave.
9. She could have gone to Cambridge if she had wanted, she <i>(to offer)</i> a scholarship.
10. On Friday she (to give) two weeks' notice at the Works.
11. Then the voice announced that the passengers (to ask)
to pass through the Customs.
12. I wondered to what extent she (to influence) by hi
name to accept his offer.
13. Such are the matters that (to deal) with in Mr. Bur
roughs's book. 14. I found the idea of going to Hereford very upsetting because I (to
promise) a very nice job a couple of weeks before.
15. Not far away she noticed the film manager in whose office she once
(to make) to feel so ridiculous.
16. – You must be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that. – Thi
car (to lend) to me by an American woman.
Ex. 19. Translate into Russian.1. Mathematics is loved by many, disliked by a few, admired and
respected by all.
2. Facts alone are wanted in life. (Ch. Dickens)
3. These parts are made of steel throughout.
4. At this point the material under examination is fed.
5. The treatment of this theory was modified.
6. The possibilities under consideration will be discussed in detail.
7. The invasion of armies is resisted; the invasion of ideas is not. (V. Hugo) 8. The initiative was supported by everybody.

- 9. As far as this theory is concerned there are different views.
- 10. The machine was tried under severe conditions.
- 11. With a catalyst the reaction was accelerated tenfold.
- 12. This stage was preceded by careful study of the results.
- 13.Little was known about subsequent negotiations except that no agreement was reached.
- 14. In an inductive argument data about past and future are taken as "reasons".
- 15. Considerably less was written about mechanisms for effecting state changes.

Ex. 20. Translate paying attention to the passive forms.

- 1. This phenomenon has been dealt with by several researches.
- 2. During the experiment the air in the laboratory was being purified by two ventilators.
 - 3. Great deposits of coal have been discovered in our region.
- 4. The construction of this hydroelectric plant *had been finished* by the end of the last year.
- 5. An interesting research in the field of electronics *is being done* at our University.
- 6. The information about weather conditions was being studied by meteorologists.
 - 7. One machine-tool is being worked at in our laboratory.
- 8. Now solar energy and its usage *are being studied* by a lot of research groups.
- 9. In present day organic chemistry new compounds *are being synthe-sized* daily.
 - 10. This work will have been done by 7 o'clock.
 - 11. New methods of obtaining polymers have been applied at our plant.
- 12. The flexible line that *has been* recently *developed* at our plant has greatly improved the production process.
- 13. A great number of experiments at the designing institute *have been made* before the flood defense system *was worked out*.
- 14. Our workshop *will have been equipped* with new multipurpose machine-tools by the time when the reconstruction of the plant is over.
- 15. Almost all chemical elements which *have been found* on Earth *have been discovered* in the Sun and the planets of solar system.

Ex. 21. Translate the text marking out the predicates in passive.

Research that is directed toward the solution of problems can be divided into two major classes: evaluative and developmental. An evaluative problem is one in which the alternative courses of action are completely specified in advance and the solution consists of selecting the "best" of these. A developmental

problem is concerned with the search for (and perhaps construction or synthesis of) instruments which yield a course of action that is better than any available at the time.

In discussing the phases of research we shall consider each of the types of research that have been identified and explore their methodological differences and similarities. But the basis of these comparisons will be laid throughout by a detailed consideration of evaluative problem solving.

As it will be seen in some detail, applied research has the advantage of being able to formulate criteria of its own efficiency in terms of the objectives for which the problem is being investigated. Because of lack of specific objectives, in pure research such criteria cannot be formulated as explicit. Consequently, in pure research many implicit assumptions are made about the conditions under which its results will be applied. In applied research these assumptions are frequently found to be unrealistic. To elaborate a previous example, in pure research the seriousness of various errors can seldom be measured. In applied problems, however, there are few cases in which this condition holds. Hence, different estimation procedures are required in applied science, and serious questions about the estimating procedures of pure science are raised. This fact is not generally appreciated; to the contrary, it is commonly believed that pure research tends to be methodologically superior to applied research. Hence, the general approach of this book may be contrary to the intuition and beliefs of many.

We shall first discuss the methodological aspects of each phase of research in an applied context, and then consider what can be learned from this representation that can be used in the pure research context.

Ex. 22. Translate the text marking out the predicates in passive.

Automation is often referred to as a new subject and its various aspects have not yet all been paid adequate attention to. Thus, for example, its commercial aspects have been only recently fully appreciated. Many problems arising from the impact of automation on national and world economy have not even been dealt with. It is, therefore, of paramount importance that general public should be informed both of its technological and social aspects.

There is hardly any aspect of human life that would not be affected by the changes that automation will bring about. Unfortunately, there is relatively little factual material available for analyzing the consequences of automatization. Indeed, most economists are not yet fully aware of the problems that might arise in the process of automatization. The effect of these developments on the trend of prices, capital investments, and balance of payments has not yet been fully appreciated. These subjects should be adequately dealt with in foreseeable future.

Ex. 23. Translate into English.
1. Исследовательская работа ведется во всех научно-исследова тельских институтах нашей страны. –
2. Русский Музей в Санкт-Петербурге, пострадавший во время Великой Отечественной войны, теперь восстановлен полностью. —
3. Строительный лес перевозится на специальных судах, называе мых лесовозами. –
4. Мне сказали вчера, что его пригласили работать на кафедре кораблестроения. –
5. Молодые семьи, пожелавшие участвовать в программе восста новления сельского хозяйства, обеспечиваются комфортным и недорогим жильем. —
6. Соглашение о перемирии было достигнуто только после продол жительных переговоров. —
7. На полученные в лаборатории данные можно ссылаться в науч ной статье. —
8. Открытие в области нанотехнологий широко освещалось во всех средствах массовой информации. —
9. По решению Правительства всем предпринимателям малого п среднего бизнеса будут предоставлены благоприятные преференции. —
10. После развала страны многие предприятия тяжелого машино строения обанкротились и требовали крупных инвестиций для восстанов ления производства. —
11. Многие лаборатории нашего университета планомерно оборуду ются новыми мощностями в соответствии с программой стратегического развития. —

TEMA 2. МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ (THE MODAL VERBS)

Модальные глаголы не обозначают действия, а выражают отношение к нему, т.е. возможность, вероятность или необходимость совершения действия. Само действие выражается инфинитивом смыслового глагола без частицы **to**, следующим за модальным глаголом.

2.1. Образование отрицательных и вопросительных форм¹

Для образования отрицательной формы после модального глагола ставится отрицательная частица **not**.

Примечание. Отрицание **not** с глаголом **can** пишется слитно: **cannot**.

We cannot handle the cargo with the help of crane. — Мы не можем обрабатывать груз с помощью крана.

Для образования вопросительной формы модальный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

Must they provide us with all necessary data? — Они **должны** снабдить нас всеми необходимыми данными?

Yes, they must. - Да, должны.

No, they need not (needn't). – Hem, не должны (не нужно).

Примечания:

- 1. Для выражения необходимости (не нужно, не надо) в отрицательной форме употребляется глагол **needn't**.
- 2. В ответе на вопрос, начинающийся с **may**, употребляется глагол **mustn't** в значении *запрещается*:

May I take this book? — No, you **mustn't**. I need it myself. — **Можно** мне взять эту книгу? — Hem, **нельзя**. Она мне нужна самому.

Итак, в английском языке следующие глаголы выражают долженствование:

must - должен, нужно, необходимо;

to have to – должен, вынужден, придется;

to be to – должен, нужно;

should – следовало бы, следует (реже должен);

ought to - следовало бы, следует (реже должен).

2.2. Can (could) = to be able to

Глагол **can** выражает возможность, способность и разрешение совершить действие и переводится на русский язык глаголами *могу (может, можешь* и т.д.), *умею (умеет, умеешь* и т.д.), *можете (вам разрешено)* и т.п.:

We can handle the cargo with the help of crane. — Мы можем обрабатывать груз с помощью крана.

¹ Текст раздела составлен по материалам учебного пособия: Тарануха Н. А., Першина Е. Ю. Английский язык для транспортных специальностей вузов . В 2 т. Т. 1. Базовый профессиональный курс. М., 2011. С. 198.

Глагол **can** в прошедшем времени имеет форму **could**.

У модального глагола **can** есть эквивалент, который употребляется наряду с соответствующим модальным глаголом и, кроме того, используется взамен отсутствующих временных форм этого модального глагола: **can** = **to be able to**:

We are able to handle the cargo with the help of crane. We were able to handle the cargo with the help of crane. We will be able to handle the cargo with the help of crane.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Put the sentences into the Past and Future Tenses.
1. I can help you. –
2. We can wait for you. –
3. You can do it yourself. –
4. He can read English books without a dictionary. –
5. She can play the piano very well. –
6. They can finish their work today. –
7. He can return in time. –

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences.

- 1. I cannot do it at once.
- 2. Can you translate this text into French?
- 3. I think we can help you.
- 4. Last year he could speak English fluently.
- 5. He could repair his radio-set himself.
- 6. When he came to London he could carry on talks without an interpreter.
- 7. We were able to finish our work for 5 days.
- 8. I am afraid he won't be able to return in time.
- 9. We will be able to fulfill all the terms of the agreement.
- 10. I knew he would be able to do this work.

2.3. May (might) = to be allowed to

Глагол **may** выражает разрешение или предположение и переводится *могу, можно, возможно*:

You may use these facilities in handling cargo. — Вы можете (вам разрешено) использовать эти устройства при обработке груза. Глагол **may** имеет форму прошедшего времени **might**, которая употребляется в соответствии с правилом согласования времен, а также для образования сослагательного наклонения.

У модального глагола **may** есть эквивалент, который употребляется наряду с соответствующим модальным глаголом и, кроме того, используется взамен отсутствующих временных форм этого модального глагола: **may** = **to be allowed to**:

You **are allowed to** use these facilities in handling cargo. You **were allowed to** use these facilities in handling cargo. You **will be allowed to** use these facilities in handling cargo.

Тренировочные упражнения
Ex. 3. Put the sentences into the Past and Future Tenses.
1. You may use my dictionary. –
2. They may start the experiment. –
3. I may work in the library. –
4. He may go on holiday. –
5. She may take any things here. –
6. You may remain in this room. –
7. Children may play in the garden. –
Ex. 4. Translate the sentences.
1. May I take your dictionary?
2. They may be at home now.
3. The weather may change tomorrow.
4. He may be sleeping now.
5. You may have another cup of tea.
6. May I smoke here?
7. He might do it yesterday.
8. We were allowed to work in this laboratory.
9. She will be allowed to take another examination.
10. Students are allowed to miss classes only in case of an illness.
Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with 'can' / 'could' or 'may' / 'might' (or the
negative forms).
1 we leave the room? Is the lesson over?
2. – you stand on your head? – I when I was at
school but I now.
3. – I smoke here? – No, you, smoking is not allowed.
4. – you type? – Yes, I type but I do shorthand.
5. – I come in? – Please, do.
6. Where I buy fruit?

7.	Не	answer	the	teacher's	questions	yesterday,	but he
	answer the same	e questio	ns to	oday.			
8.	– I come	and see	you 1	this evenin	g? – Of co	urse you	•
9.	When I first wen	t to Spai	n I _	1	ead Spanis	sh but I	
speak it.							
10	10. He said that we			use his fla	t whenever	we liked.	
11	11. There was a lot of noise in the street last night, and I sle			_ sleep.			
12	12. I borrow your umbrella?						
13	. The boys	wait f	or h	im, they ha	ive no time	for that.	
14	. It's very cold		_ I sl	hut the wir	ndows?		

2.4. Must = to be to, to have to

Глагол **must** выражает необходимость, обязательность или вероятность совершения действия и переводится должен, нужно, надо, вероятно:

They **must** provide us with all necessary data. — Они **должны** снабдить нас всеми необходимыми данными.

Глагол **must** не имеет формы прошедшего времени.

У модального глагола **must** есть эквиваленты, которые употребляются наряду с соответствующим модальным глаголом и, кроме того, используются взамен отсутствующих временных форм этого модального глагола: must = to be to, to have to.

Когда речь идет о необходимости совершения действия в силу предварительной договоренности или заранее намеченного плана или расписания, употребляется эквивалент **to be to** с последующим инфинитивом основного глагола. Глагол **to be to** в модальном значении употребляется в настоящем или прошедшем времени группы Indefinite; для выражения действия в будущем употребляется настоящее время глагола **to be**:

Old engine **is to** be replaced next month. — Старый двигатель **должен** быть заменен в следующем месяце.

Old engine **was to** be replaced last month. — Старый двигатель **должен был** быть заменен в прошлом месяце.

Если же речь идет о необходимости совершения действия в силу обстоятельств, то употребляется эквивалент **to have to** в значении *должен*, *вынужден*, *приходится* с последующим инфинитивом основного глагола. Глагол **to have to** в модальном значении употребляется в настоящем или прошедшем времени группы Indefinite:

As the engine is old you have to replace it. — Так как этот двигатель старый, вам придется его заменить.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 6. Put the sentences into the Past and Future Tenses. 1. We must go home. — 2. He must be at the factory in the morning. — 3. You must come to the lessons in time. — 4. I must learn the poem by heart. — 5. She must do it at once. — 6. They must pass their exams. — 7. You must do your exercises at home. —

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences.

- 1. I must go there immediately.
- 2. Her English is very poor, she must study very hard.
- 3. You must always think twice before you say anything.
- 4. He must read much to improve his pronunciation.
- 5. She must wait for us in the Institute.
- 6. She must be waiting for us in the Institute.
- 7. They must be in the Institute now.
- 8. You must follow my advice.
- 9. It must be raining now.
- 10. She must be ill, otherwise she would come.
- 11. I have to get up very early.
- 12. Mother has to cook dinner after work.
- 13. They had to cover the whole distance on foot.
- 14. He had to wait for a while as the director was late.
- 15. I had to stay at home yesterday because I had much work.
- 16. You will have to speak to him personally.
- 17. You will have to leave at six to catch the train.
- 18. She will have to do it once over again.
- 19. I have to do it myself.
- 20. He said that you would have to go there on your own.
- 21. They were to sign the contract last week.
- 22. He is to come tonight.
- 23. He was to leave on Monday.
- 24. Our meeting is to take place next week.
- 25. We are to finish this work in summer.
- 26. We were to meet at the station at 6 o'clock.
- 27. The train is to arrive late at night.

Ex	. 8. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the modal verbs 'must', 'to
	if the action is only necessary; by to be to – if it is expected.
1.	This is Dora. She (to share) your room.
2.	I must leave you now. I (to do) the cooking.
3.	Who (to meet) you there?
4.	My feet are wet. I (to change) my stockings.
5.	My feet are wet. I (to change) my stockings. I'm afraid you (to go) there alone, darling. I've such a
headache	!
6.	When the lecture (to begin)? Two more apartment houses (to be built) here.
7.	Two more apartment houses (to be built) here.
8.	Well, children, who (to do) the dishes tonight?
9.	Sorry, I've got to rush. I (to meet) mother at the
metro sta	tion at 6 sharp.
10.	You (to leave) at six to catch the train.
11.	I (to write) a letter to my sister. I am worried about her.
12.	She (to wear) glasses as her eyesight is very weak.
13.	It is raining. You (to put on) your raincoat.
14.	It was planned that we should wait for them after the performance. We
(to wait)	for them at the entrance.
E.	O Tuguellate the would in hugokets
	. 9. Translate the words in brackets. Of course, I (now) translate this article.
1. 2	Of course, I (<i>mozy</i>) translate this article.
2.	I think I (мог бы) show you how to do it.
3. 1	You (можно) go and tell her about it.
	(Можно) I see the doctor now?
	He (мог бы помочь) you but he didn't want to bother.
	You (Moxeme) easily get there in 20 minutes.
/. Q	You (сможете) do it directly on return. (Можно) I have some cream with my tea?
0.	Von (von ag)
9. 10	You (нельзя) discuss the subject with your friends.
1 U.	She was in a hurry, she (не могла) wait for us. There is a sign. You (нельзя) take pictures here.
11.	The swimmer was very tired but he (even)
	The swimmer was very tired but he (cmoz) reach the shore.
13. 11	Before her illness, she (могла) work fourteen hours a day.
	When they buy a car, they (смогут) visit their
III CHUS III	ore often.

2.5. Should, ought to

Глаголы **should** и **ought to** употребляются для выражения морального долга или совета и переводятся *должен*, *следует*. Являясь модальным глаголом, **should** употребляется со всеми лицами единственного и множественного числа.

Глагол **ought to** употребляется во всех лицах единственного и множественного числа:

Young men **should** serve in the army. — Юноши **должны** служить в армии.

You **ought to** be careful when handling cargo. — Вы **должны** быть осторожны при обработке груза.

Глагол **should** в модальном значении часто употребляется в инструкциях:

These machines **should** be handled with great care. -C этими машинами **следует** обращаться с большой осторожностью.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences.

- 1. He should be more careful about his health.
- 2. You shouldn't speak to him in such a manner.
- 3. You shouldn't behave like that.
- 4. You should help him in his work.
- 5. They should visit their grandparents more often.
- 6. The young ought to respect old age.
- 7. I have done what I ought to do.
- 8. Why do you ask my opinion? You ought to know better.
- 9. You can't change anything, so you ought to put up with it.
- 10. He feels that he ought to do something about it without any delay.

Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with either 'should' or 'must'. Translate into Russian.

1. a) You look fresh! You	have had a good sleep at night.
b) You look tired! You	have a good sleep at night.
2. a) They	have studied the subject more thoroughly; they
will regret it later on.	
b) They	have studied the subject thoroughly; they an-
swered every question.	
3. a) You	have ignored the traffic regulations. That's why
you were fined.	
b) You	have followed the traffic regulations, and then
you would not have been fined.	
4. a) He	be working at his problem now.
b) He	work at the problem, it hasn't been solved yet.
5. a) I	have taken Grandfather's spectacles. I cannot
see anything through them.	
b) I ha	we taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything.

2.6. Need

Модальный глагол **need** выражает необходимость совершения действия. Так как модальный глагол **need** употребляется только в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях, то он чаще всего переводится *не нужно*, *нет необходимости*:

Need the cargo be transported in container? — **Нужно** этот груз перевозить в контейнере?

You **needn't** use the crane while handling. — **Hem необходимости** использовать кран при обработке груза.

Примечание. Глагол **need** в значении *нуждаться в чем-либо* является смысловым, все временные формы образуются по соответствующим правилам.

You **need** a long rest. — Ты **нуждаешься** в длительном отдыхе. **Do** you **need** a long rest? — Yes, I **do**.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex.12. Translate the sentences.

- 1. I need this book for my report.
- 2. Do you need my help? No, thank you. I don't need it yet.
- 3. You needn't come here every day.

Ex. 13. Paraphrase the following using the modal verb 'need'.

Model: Was it quite necessary for you to do the work instead of him? Need you do the work instead of him?

	1. It is not necessary to copy the composition. I can read it as it is. –
	2. It was not necessary for her to carry the bags all by herself: there were
porte	rs at the station. –
	3. Why do you want to buy a new bag? I could have lent you mine
	4. There is no use worrying about her; she is quite able to take care of her-
self	-
	5. What's the use of reproaching yourself? –
	6. I don't think there is any need to bother them. –

	x. 14. Give an advice or make a recommendation. Use the modal verbs. I overslept again this morning. –
2	Someone's stolen my wallet. –
3	Betty got terribly sunburn yesterday. –
4	We're spending our holidays in Florida next summer. –
5	You've always late for work. –
6	We're hopelessly lost. –
7	There's someone knocking at the door. –
8	The road is icy this morning. –
	Our train leaves in a few minutes. –
1	O. The rain is coming through the roof. –

В табл. 2.1 приведены модальные глаголы и их эквиваленты, а также способы употребления модальных глаголов.

Таблица 2.1 Модальные глаголы

Модальный	Случаи	Перевод	Примеры
глагол	употребления		
1	2	3	4
	1. возможность	1. могу, умею,	1. I can speak Eng-
		возможно	lish.
can (could) =	2. разрешение	2. можно	2. You <i>can</i> read
= to be able to			aloud.
	3. запрещение	3. нельзя	3. You <i>can't</i> cross
			street here
	1. разрешение	1. можно, раз-	1. May I come in?
may (might) -		решается	
may (might) = = to be allowed	2. строгое за-	2. не смей	2. You <i>may not</i>
	прещение		smoke here.
to	3. предположе-	3. возможно,	3. He <i>may</i> know her
	ние	может быть	address

Продолжение табл. 2.1

1	2	3	4
must =	1. долг, обяза-	1. должен	1. We <i>must</i> study
	тельство		hard.
	2. настоятель-	2. должен	2. You <i>must</i> consult
	ный совет, при-		a doctor.
	каз		
	3. запрещение	3. запрещено,	3. You <i>mustn't</i> run
		нельзя	here.
to have to	4. в связи с об-	4. приходится,	4. You have to go to
	стоятельствами	вынужден	hospital.
to be to	5. с планом, по	5. должен	5. He <i>is to</i> meet us at
	договорённости		7 o'clock
	моральный	должен, следу-	You should stop
should	долг, обязатель-	ет, нужно (бы-	smoking.
	ство, совет,	ло бы), следо-	You ought to help
ought to	рекомендация,	вало бы	your friends
	порицание		
	1. необходи-	1. нужно, есть	1. Need I do it to-
	мость	ли необходи-	day?
		мость	
	2. отсутствие	2. не надо, нет	2. He <i>needn't</i> hurry.
need (-,?)	необходимости	необходимости	
	3. разрешение	3. можно не	3. You <i>needn't</i> copy
	<u>не</u> делать чл.		the text.
	4. смысловой	4. нуждаться в	4. He <i>needs</i> a long
	глагол	чём-либо	rest

2.7. Употребление модальных глаголов в сочетании с инфинитивом пассивного залога

Инфинитив пассивного залога Indefinite Passive после модальных глаголов **can**, **may**, **must** и **should** переводится неопределенной формой глагола:

Today lathes can be found in any shop. — B настоящее время токарные станки можно найти в любом цехе.

В отрицательной форме модальные глаголы **can** и **may** с инфинитивом пассивного залога переводятся *нельзя*, **must**, **should** – *не следует*:

This device may not be switched on here. — Этот прибор нельзя здесь включать.

The batteries **should not be kept** uncharged. — Батареи **не следует держать** разряженными.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences with the modal verbs and the Passive Infinitives.

- 1. This book *can be taken* in the library.
- 2. This work *cannot be finished* today.
- 3. These data *could be obtained* only in Moscow.
- 4. This work *must be done* thoroughly.
- 5. This work *has to be done* every day.
- 6. The question will have to be considered again.
- 7. The article *had to be divided* into two parts.
- 8. The documents *must be checked*.
- 9. The permission *may be obtained* very soon.
- 10. According to the contract goods are to be delivered in September.
- 11. The letter *should be sent* immediately.
- 12. This question *should be discussed* at the next meeting.
- 13. He needn't be asked about it.
- 14. This book *should be translated* into Russian.
- 15. The goods *ought to be examined* before loading.

2.8. Употребление модальных глаголов в сочетании с перфектным инфинитивом

Модальный глагол **must** в сочетании с перфектным инфинитивом выражает предположение, относящееся к прошлому, и переводится *должено быть*, *вероятно*:

Originally the Earth's temperature **must have been** extremely high. – Вначале температура Земли **была, вероятно,** чрезвычайно высокой.

Модальный глагол **may** также выражает предположение, но переводится *возможно*:

He **may have finished** his experiment, but we don't know about it yet. — Он, **возможно, закончил** свой опыт, но мы еще ничего об этом не знаем.

Модальные глаголы **could**, **should**, **might**, **ought to** в сочетании с перфектным инфинитивом употребляются для выражения действия, которое могло бы произойти, но не произошло:

You could have done this work yourself. — Вы могли бы сделать эту работу сами (но не сделали).

They should have tested the new equipment. — Они должны были проверить новое оборудование (но не проверили).

The student **ought to have been** careful while working with this instrument. Now the instrument is broken. — Студенту **следовало быть** осторожным, работая с этим прибором. Теперь прибор сломан.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 16. Translate the sentences with the modal verbs and the Perfect Infinitives.

- 1. He *can't have done* it, it's very unlike him.
- 2. They *can't have left* without saying good-bye.
- 3. He *may have forgotten* about our appointment.
- 4. She *may have* already *returned* home.
- 5. He *must have missed* the train.
- 6. They *must have lost* your address.
- 7. She *must have left* her bag at home.
- 8. Some mistakes *must have been made* in the translation.
- 9. The goods may have been damaged in transit.
- 10. Can he have said it? He must have been very angry with you.
- 11. You should have done it yesterday.
- 12. They shouldn't have helped her. She could do it herself.
- 13. You needn't have gone there.
- 14. You *ought to have done* it properly.
- 15. They should have been informed about it some days ago.

Ex. 17. Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I don't feel well now. I should ((to remember)	to
take the medicine yesterday.	·	
2. Children should (to obey)	their parents.	
3. It's three o'clock and I'm fee	eling very hungry; I should (to ed	at)
more for lunch.		
4. The little boy was playing with	n his father's typewriter and of cour	rse
he broke it; he shouldn't (to allow)	him to play with it.	
5. You have a weak heart. You sho	ouldn't (to run)	
6. I was very tired last summer and	d I should (to take)	
a holiday, but there was too much work to	do.	
7. When he went for a walk he sho	ould <i>(to take)</i> !	his
umbrella, it looked like rain (but he didn't)).	
8. The workmen are very slow; the	e job should (to finish)	
a week ago.		

9. You shouldn't (to eat)	so much bread, now you've
gained weight.	
10. You shouldn't (to go)	out yesterday without a coat.
No wonder you caught cold.	
11. You should (to cross)	the road by the subway (but
you didn't).	
12. He should (to check)	that his brakes were working
properly (but he didn't).	
13. You should (to warn)	him that the ice was danger-
ous (but you didn't).	
14. Tom's had another accident. It so	unds like Tom's fault. He should (to
wait) till the main road	l was clear.
Ex. 18. Use 'should' or 'had to' with	the correct form of the Infinitive in
brackets.	1
1. I (to send) a teleg	fram because it was too late to send a
letter. You (to remind)	_ me to do it earlier.
letter. You (to remind) him	the news; he was so much upset, but
I really (to do) so, for the	e circumstances demanded it.
3. The agreement was that if Johnny	
had borrowed, then Luke Flint (to have)	
4. It was very hard work but we (to do	
5. She (not to let)	it pass like that, she (to explain)
to him that he was wi	
6. Although it was unpleasant to he	•
him that he was wrong.	·

Обзорные упражнения

Ex. 19. Choose the correct answer according to tense and meaning. Translate the sentences.

- 1. If I had a car I (would drive / will drive) to my office every day.
- 2. Gregory (would have gone / would go) on a boating trip to Lake Michigan if he had been free.
- 3. Lora wasn't at school yesterday. She (will have / may have had) an accident.
- 4. He said he could manage for the time being but he *(needed / would need)* some help later.
- 5. Bet was supposed to be home at 7o'clock. She *(must forget / must have forgotten)* about Sharon's visit.
- 6. Where do you think he is today? He (should have slept / may have slept) late.

- 7. Lora missed her classes today. She *(might have fallen / might had fallen)* ill.
- 8. Robert arrived without his book. He *(could have lost / would have lost)* it.
- 9. Mary received a warning for speeding. She *(should have driven / shouldn't have driven)* so fast.
- 10. His car stopped on the way to the bank. It (may run / may have run) out of petrol.

Ex. 20. Translate the sentences with the modal verbs.

- 1. I can do everything for you.
- 2. The project was so expensive that it could not be continued.
- 3. This procedure can help to solve the problem more efficiently.
- 4. Using radioactive isotopes the scientists will be able to carry out many experiments.
 - 5. The compass used by a pilot has to be small and light in weight.
 - 6. You ought to know that these terms may be used as synonyms.
 - 7. It should be noted that in all cases the same devices must be used.
 - 8. The two ends cannot have had the same polarity.
 - 9. Careful attention must be paid to the construction of the diagram.
 - 10. The engines should be as simple as possible.
- 11. We will have to work out an experiment in which we will be able to use the new substance.
- 12. Heat is a form of energy and may be measured in the units in which energy is measured.
- 13. As to the technician, several times a day he has to make an important decision: can a TV set be properly repaired at home or should it be taken to the shop? To make the right decision he must know the kind of repair needed.
 - 14. That apparatus was to be used for testing the means of communication.
 - 15. These two units of power may be used to define two units of work.
 - 16. Water might be used for this purpose, but oil is more convenient.
 - 17. He cannot have made such a serious mistake.
 - 18. You should have recorded the data in time.
- 19. The devices must have been tested and adjusted, but they are to be examined again.

Ex. 21. Insert the modal verbs in the appropriate form. 1. You ______ be careful when crossing the street. 2. The bus was not going that direction, so he _____ to change. 3. You _____ work hard to improve your English. 4. When I asked him why he was so late, he explained that he had missed the bus and _____ wait for another one. 5. There is nobody to help me, and I _____ do all the work myself.

6.	There was no choice and he to agree.			
7.	The work be finished as soon as possible, it's your duty.			
8.	According to the time-table the lecture take place			
next Mon				
	Why are you so late? Didn't you get my letter saying that we meet at 4 o'clock.			
10.	The train arrive at 6, but evidently something unex-			
pected ha	s happened.			
11.	You not give the child so much money, it will spoil him.			
12.	You not come so early, you will have to wait.			
13.	You speak to him, it will cheer him up.			
14.	If you want to be healthy, you give up smoking.			
15.	You not get upset over trifles, you pull			
yourself t	together.			
16.	You not return the money so soon, I can wait.			
17.	Don't contradict her, you respect her age.			
18.	You read this text quite easily, you knowledge is well			
enough.				
19.	You take this book, I don't need it.			
20.	I be of any service to you?			
21.	I open the window?			
	you do me a favour?			
23.	Buy this dictionary. You want it one day.			
24.	I not imagine her teaching children, she is so impatient.			
25.	Something was wrong with the telephone, I not hear			
anything.				
26.	I come to you tonight?			
27.	easily do without you. He easily do without you. manage the task by himself, it is beyond his powers.			
29.	I ask you to explain the rule once more?			
Ex.	. 22. Translate the sentences.			
	It must be done at once.			
2.	This material can be used for your work.			
3.	•			
4.	The work couldn't be finished in time.			
5.	The books may be left on the table.			
6.	This work has to be done every day.			
7.	Your article should be changed.			
	The question must be discussed immediately.			
	He must be given support.			
	A railway should be constructed across the desert.			

Ex. 23. Translate the winged words into Russian.

- 1. The longest day must have an end.
- 2. Little friends may prove great friends. (Aesop)
- 3. They who lose today may win tomorrow.
- 4. A fool may ask more questions than a wise man can answer.
- 5. Everything must have a beginning.
- 6. A man can do no more than he can.
- 7. Any blind man can see it.
- 8. Do as you may if you cannot do as you would.
- 9. The bird that can sing and will not sing must be made to sing.
- 10. They must often change who would be constant in happiness or wisdom. (Confucius)
 - 11. He that can have patience can have what he will.
 - 12. Life can be understood backwards, but it must be lived forwards.
- 13. What the businessman needs to know is how the new developments can be applied to industry.
 - 14. Children should be seen not heard.
 - 15. Books and friends should be few but good.
 - 16. He has made his bed, and he has to lie on it.
 - 17. He that would eat the fruit must climb the tree.
- 18. He who would write heroic poems should make his whole life a heroic poem. (*T. Carlyle*)
 - 19. All would live long, but none would be old. (B. Franklin)
 - 20. We shall be able to correct the program.
 - 21. He was allowed to perform the operation.
 - 22. These problems were to be considered together.
 - 23. Such a search will have to be undertaken.
 - 24. Unfortunately, some things just have to be learned by rote.
 - 25. I am to go to the conference.
 - 26. I have to go to the conference.
 - 27. The full five names do not have to be specified.
 - 28. For other types of signals the carrier level may have to be increased.
 - 29. The women were not allowed to take their tea breaks until she had left.
 - 30. Bad news should be broken gently and good news all at once.

Ex. 24. Translate the text paying attention to the modal verbs and their equivalents.

THE PLAN FOR IMPLEMENTATION

Planning for the implementation of research results should begin when the research itself begins; it should not wait until the results are obtained. Specifically, the technical abilities of those who will use the results and the facilities at their disposal should be taken into account in determining the form and nature of

the research results which should be sought. It would be foolish to expect a clerk to solve an equation requiring the calculus of variations; a monograph or a table may be necessary. But a monograph or a table may be able to provide only very approximate solutions to equations. An approximation which is used, however, will produce better results than an exact solution which is ignored. In order to assure that the research results are carried out as intended, it is necessary to develop a detailed plan for their implementation. This need is generally acknowledged where the action ultimately to be taken is to be performed by a computer. In such a situation the researcher recognizes his responsibility for developing a program for the computer. What is not so well recognized is that almost as detailed a program is required for human operators. It is necessary to specify exactly who is to do what, when they are to do it, and how. The *who* and *when* can normally be shown on a flow chart which indicates the way that the relevant operations are to be conducted. The *what* requires detailed instructions in terms of operations that can be performed by the kinds of people involved.

Ex. 25. Translate the sentences into English. 1. Может быть, он и вернулся в Москву, но я его еще не видел.	
2. Он очень бледен. Вероятно, он очень устал	
3. Эта статья, должно быть, была написана для выступления конференции. –	на
4. Декан сказал мне, что я могу приходить в лабораторию в люб время. –	oe
5. Студенты, возможно, придут только завтра, так как они не знагоб изменении расписания. –	ОТ
6. Я не думал, что это может случиться очень скоро	_
7. Это произведение, может быть, и было не актуально, но он вероятно, прочли его внимательно, так как смогли воспроизвести всё деталях. —	
8. Можно здесь заниматься с руководителем? –	_
9. Товары, должно быть, были упакованы очень небрежно, так к получили повреждения при перевозке. –	— :ак
10. Ему сказали, что, возможно, ему придется вернуться раньше.	_

11. Она, должно быть, была очень рада встрече с вам	ии. –
12. Я не мог найти этот журнал в библиотеке, мне пр читальный зал. –	ишлось пойти в
13. Нам удалось перевезти все товары в течение десят	 ги дней. –
14. Неужели вам не сказали об этом? –	
15. Мы могли бы сделать этот перевод более грамотн было больше времени. –	о, если бы у нас
16. Если бы все меры предосторожности были предг могла и не произойти. –	 іриняты, авария

ТЕМА 3. ПРИЧАСТИЕ (THE PARTICIPLE)

Причастие — это неличная форма глагола, имеющая признаки как прилагательного, так и глагола. Существуют простые и сложные формы причастия.

3.1. Способы образования причастия

Причастия имеют следующие формы:

Типы	Active	Passive	Действие
причастий			
Participle I	building	being built Выражает действие, одновременное	
			с действием глагола-сказуемого
			Выражает действие, одновременное
Participle II		built	с действием глагола-сказуемого или
			предшествующее ему
Perfect	having	having Выражает действие, предшествую-	
Participle	built	been built	щее действию глагола-сказуемого

Participle I образуется путем прибавления -ing к основе глагола.

Participle II – это 3-я форма глагола.

Perfect Participle образуется по всем правилам образования временной формы Perfect.

3.2. Функции причастия

Функции Participle I в предложении:

1. *Определение*. Переводится причастием активного залога с суффиксами -ущ, -ющ, -ащ, -ящ, -ш или определительным придаточным предложением. В функции определения Participle I может стоять перед определяемым словом или после него:

The building ship is standing in the yard. — **Строящееся** судно стоит на верфи.

The ship **building** in the yard is called 'Peter the Great'. — Судно, **строящееся** на верфи, называется «Петр Великий».

2. *Обстоятельство*. Переводится деепричастием с суффиксами -*a*, -*a*, -*a*в, -*u*в или обстоятельственным придаточным предложением:

Handling cargo one must take precautions. — **Обрабатывая** грузы необходимо соблюдать осторожность.

Air transportation, **being** one of the means of transportation, is considered to be the fastest one. — Авиаперевозки, **являясь** одним из средств транспортировки, считаются самыми быстрыми.

3. Часть сказуемого во временах группы Continuous и Perfect Continuous. Переводится глаголом в личной форме:

The shipbuilders **are applying** the most progressive methods of constructing vessels. — Судостроители **применяют** самые прогрессивные методы строительства судов.

Participle I с союзами **when** $- \kappa o c \partial a$ и **while** $- \varepsilon$ *mo время как* переводится:

- а) деепричастием (или деепричастным оборотом), при этом союз опускается;
 - b) придаточным предложением с союзами когда, в то время как;
 - с) предлогом npu + существительное:

When (while) loading goods they use different handling cargoes facilities. — Загружая (когда загружали, при загрузке) товара, они использовали различные средства обработки груза.

В предложении Participle II может быть:

1. Определением. Переводится причастием пассивного залога с суффиксами-окончаниями, -нный, -емый, -имый, -тый, -шийся, -вшийся. В функции определения Participle II может стоять перед определяемым словом или после него:

The ships **produced** by our shop are of **improved** quality. — $Cy\partial a$, **выпус- каемые** нашим цехом, **улучшенного** качества.

Обратите особое внимание на перевод предложений, в которых за подлежащим следуют два слова с окончанием -ed. Первое из них обычно является определением в форме Participle II и при переводе ставится перед определяемым словом, второе является сказуемым в Past Indefinite:

The cargo transported handled by crane. — Перевозимый груз обрабатывался краном.

Однако первым словом может быть сказуемое в Past Indefinite, а вторым – Participle II в функции определения:

Yesterday the engineer demonstrated improved mechanisms. — Вчера инженер показал усовершенствованные механизмы.

2. Обстоятельством. Перед Participle II в функции обстоятельства обычно стоят союзы **when** $- \kappa o \varepsilon \partial a$, **if** - e c n u, **unless** - e c n u не, **as** $- \kappa a \kappa$. Такой причастный оборот переводится, как правило, придаточным обстоятельственным предложением, а иногда - предлогом n p u + существительное:

As seen from the article these ships are produced at out works. — **Как видно** из статьи, эти суда изготавливаются на нашем заводе.

Unless tested the mechanisms must not be put into operation. — Ecnu механизм не испытан (не прошел испытаний), его нельзя эксплуатировать.

3. *Частью сказуемого* в пассивном залоге и во временах группы Perfect; переводится глаголом в личной форме:

I was told about this discovery only a few days ago. — Мне сказали об этом открытии только несколько дней назад.

They have considerably **developed** the engine. — Они значительно **усо-вершенствовали** двигатель.

Participle I Passive в предложении может быть:

1. Определением. Переводится причастием пассивного залога с суффиксами-окончаниями -щийся, -вшийся, -мый или определительным придаточным предложением:

The plant **being built** in our town will produce ice-breakers. — Завод, **строящийся** в нашем городе, будет выпускать ледоколы.

2. *Обстоятельством* времени или причины. Обычно переводится обстоятельственным предложением времени или причины (реже причастным оборотом со словом *будучи*):

Being built in our town, the ship will be called the name of one of the first builders. — **Так как** корабль **строится** в нашем городе, он будет назван именем одного из первостроителей.

Perfect Participle Active и Passive в предложении являются только обстоятельством (времени или причины) и переводятся:

1. Perfect Participle Active – деепричастием совершенного вида с суффиксами -ав, -ив или придаточным предложением:

Having repaired the engine, the mechanic showed it to the engineer. — Отремонтировав мотор, механик показал его инженеру. (После того как механик отремонтировал мотор, он ...).

2. Perfect Participle Passive – придаточным предложением с союзами *так как, после того как, когда*:

Having been repaired, the engine began operating better. — **После того** как мотор был отремонтирован, он начал работать лучше.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Form the Participle I from the following verbs and translate hem.

inem.	1	
to bring –	to build –	
to begin –	to use –	
to think –	to receive –	
to give –	to write –	
to read –	to develop –	
to produce –	to play –	
to move –	to return –	
to refuse –	to get -	
to make –	to meet -	
to keep –	to decide –	
to study –	to achieve –	
to divide –	to enter –	
to work –	to discover –	
to obtain –	to take –	
to do -	to speak –	
Ex. 2. Form the Participle II 1	from the following verbs and translate	
them.	3 3	
to translate –	to add –	
to install –	to contain –	
to change –	to save –	
to equip –	to divide –	
to include –	to offer –	
to construct –	to adjust –	
to test –	to collect -	
to develop –	to take –	
to make –	to know –	

to leave –	to see –
to show –	
to teach –	to pay
to write –	to find –
to grow –	to cut
to put –	to say –
forms of the Participles.	ombinations paying attention to the different
a) Participle I в функции оп	
the student taking examinations – _	
the workers building a house –	
the plant producing new equipment	
the engineer designing optical device	ces –
the scientist carrying out research –	
the man studying foreign languages	; —
the professor delivering a lecture –	
the road connecting two villages –	
the boy playing in the garden –	
the student knowing everything – _	
b) Participle I в функции об	бстоятельства:
using new equipment –	
entering the Institute –	
obtaining new data –	
moving at high speed –	
translating a text –	
staying at home –	
doing an experiment –	
attending all the lectures –	
graduating from the University –	
c) Perfect Participle Active 6	функции обстоятельства:
	ty –
having developed a new method –	
having installed the equipment –	
having read the text –	
having passed the exam –	
having lost the key –	

having missed the lectures –
having taken necessary measures –
having constructed the road –
having discovered a new substance –
having crossed the street –
having solved the problem –
having discussed the question –
d) Participle II в функции определения:
the translated text –
the obtained information –
the installed devices –
the exported goods –
the signed documents –
the article published in this journal –
the telegram sent yesterday –
the machinery produced by the plant –
the facts mentioned in this article –
the book written by the scientist –
the newspapers brought in the morning –
mistakes made by the students –
the writer known all over the world –
the poem read aloud –
the film shown after the lecture –
Ex. 4. Translate into English.
a) Participle I в функции определения:
студент, знающий три иностранных языка —
инженер, использующий новые методы –
ученый, разрабатывающий новую теорию
профессор, читающий лекцию –
мужчина, курящий у окна –
люди, работающие на фабрике –
рабочие, строящие туннель –
канал, соединяющий два моря –
человек, предлагающий свою помощь –
завод, производящий автомобили —
b) Participle II в функции определения:
текст, переведенный студентом —
усовершенствованные методы —
вопрос, обсуждаемый на собрании –

книга, найденная в аудитории –			
университет, основанный Ломоносовым –			
поэма, написанная Пушкиным –			
данные, полученные компьютером —			
прибор, сконструированный в нашей лаборатории –			
история, рассказанная на уроке –			
книга, взятая в библиотеке –			
c) Participle I в функции обстоятельства:			
читая книгу —			
рассказывая историю –			
строя дома —			
используя новые методы —			
сдавая экзамены —			
проводя эксперимент —			
изучая физику —			
изучая физику —			
думая о будущем —			
работая эффективно —			
d) Perfect Participle Active в функции обстоятельства:			
прочитав книгу —			
переведя статью —			
окончив работу –			
окончив университет –			
получив данные —			
построив завод –			
обсудив предложение –			
открыв новые земли —			
решив все проблемы –			
изучив три иностранных языка –			
сдав все экзамены —			
установив оборудование —			
написав диссертацию –			
получив диплом —			
повторив эксперимент –			

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences.

a) Participle I в функции определения:

- 1. The engineer making an experiment must take all safety measures.
- 2. The electric current passing through a wire will heat that wire.

- 3. All the students taking part in this work must come to the laboratory tomorrow.
 - 4. I've read an interesting book describing important historical events.
 - 5. We came up to the man standing at the corner and asked him the way.
 - 6. The people waiting for you are factory workers.
- 7. The conference taking place at the University is devoted to problems of nuclear physics.
 - 8. The documents lying on the table must be signed today.
 - 9. Gases are composed of particles moving at great speed.
 - 10. The melting snow keeps constant temperature.

b) Participle I в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. Reading the book I knew many interesting facts.
- 2. Crossing the street he was caught into an accident.
- 3. Mildly speaking, you are wrong.
- 4. Going to the Institute I met an old friend of mine.
- 5. Having much time he decided to put off the experiment.
- 6. Being a good engineer he managed to do this work in a short time.
- 7. He was sitting at the table looking through the morning mail.
- 8. Comparing the facts we can make the following conclusions.
- 9. Inspecting the apparatus we found it to be out of order.
- 10. Revolving around the Sun, the Earth also revolves around its axis.

c) Participle II в функции определения:

- 1. The machinery ordered from abroad will be delivered soon.
- 2. The opinions expressed by critics greatly differ.
- 3. New methods used in machine-building will be discussed at the conference.
 - 4. I cannot forget the story told by him.
 - 5. Here are newspapers and magazines received by our library.
 - 6. I hope you won't repeat the mistakes made in your last dictation.
 - 7. I haven't yet looked through all the journals sent to us from abroad.
 - 8. I have read the article translated from English.
 - 9. The dictionaries taken from the library must be returned by 6 o'clock.
 - 10. The goods produced by this factory are of very high quality.
 - 11. The decision arrived at was to everybody's satisfaction.
 - 12. Defeated, he did not feel discouraged.
 - 13. Some problems touched upon in the report are of great importance.
 - 14. The news received yesterday upset everybody.
 - 15. The method mentioned is worth using.
 - 16. The article referred to will be published soon.
- 17. The lecture followed by a number of experiments was delivered by a famous scientist.

- 18. The analysis influenced by several factors was made thoroughly.
- 19. The body acted on by a number of forces is shown in the figure below.
- 20. The film followed by the lecture was of great interest to everybody.

Ex. 6. Replace the italicized adverbial clauses of time by the appropriate form of the Participle using the models.

Mode	11: читаякогда читаюкогда читал	(when, while) reading
Mode	l 2: прочитав когда прочитал потому что прочи	 having read тал
1. As	she had been walking m	ost of the night, she felt tired and sleepy
myself. –		circus, I always know I'm going to enjoy
3. As performance		ing like that before, I was eager to see the
a job. –	_	st examination, he began to look round for
and rose		ond cup of coffee, he folded the newspaper
bothered. –	nenever sne spoke on tne	e subject, she was liable to get all hot and
7. <i>W</i> plans. –	hen I had finally made up	o my mind, I told my parents about my new
8. As decided to g	_	her housekeeping money, she reluctantly
9. As	s she had not had any lun	ach, she wanted her tea badly. –
10. W	hen I spoke to her I alwa	ys tried to make my meaning clear. –
11. W	hen we were playing ches	ss that evening, we kept watching each oth-
		nildren to school, she could go and do her

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences paying attention to the Passive and Perfect Participles.

a) Perfect Participle Active в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. Having got what he wanted he went away.
- 2. Having told all he knew the witness left the box.
- 3. I felt tired having worked all day in the sun.
- 4. Having passed the exams he went on holiday.
- 5. Having completed all our preparations we started a new series of experiments.
 - 6. Never having experienced such difficulties, he was at a loss.
 - 7. Having lived in France for a long time, she knows French perfectly.
 - 8. Having arranged everything he went home.
 - 9. Having lost the address of his friend, he could not send him a telegram.
- 10. Having received the information the computer could process the data obtained.

b) Participle I Passive в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. Being heated, most substances expand.
- 2. Being asked the student could not give an answer.
- 3. Being very absent-minded he made many mistakes in the dictation.
- 4. Being published in the journal, the article attracted everybody's attention.
- 5. Being told of his arrival I went to see him.
- 6. These machines will be sent to the plant being constructed in this region.
- 7. This plant will produce the new types of machines being imported now from abroad.
- 8. The method of work being employed at the factory is quite new and very effective.
 - 9. Being checked with great care, the report had no errors.
 - 10. The house being built now will be a drama theatre.

c) Perfect Participle Passive в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. Having been trained by a good teacher, he could easily pass all the exams.
 - 2. Having been warned of the danger, they took all necessary measures.
- 3. Having been examined at the customs, the goods were taken to the warehouse.
- 4. Having been well prepared for the examination, the student got an excellent mark.
 - 5. Having been tested, the new equipment was installed in the laboratory.
 - 6. Having been conducted thoroughly, the experiment gave good results.
 - 7. Having been studied carefully, the new method was finally adopted.
 - 8. Having been done properly, the work was a success.

- 9. Having been well organized, the talks were finished in time.
- 10. Not having been approved by the committee, the proposal was turned down.

d) Participle I с союзами 'when' и 'while':

- 1. When writing a telegram we should use as few words as possible.
- 2. All electrical conductors dissipate heat when carrying current.
- 3. When inspecting the apparatus you must be very careful.
- 4. When making an experiment take all necessary precautions.
- 5. Be polite when addressing people.
- 6. While working in the laboratory yesterday he hurt himself.
- 7. While translating texts we learn many new words.
- 8. While crossing the Atlantic Ocean the ship met with a violent storm.
- 9. While waiting in the reception room he thought over what he would say to the manager.
 - 10. While making calculations we found out many mistakes.
 - 11. When doing this work you must observe safety rules.
 - 12. While doing this work he got new data.
- 13. When studying foreign languages you should remember that it is necessary for your future work.
 - 14. While studying English I was able to read many books in the original.
- 15. While solving the equation the student found the ratio between the numbers.

e) Participle II с союзами 'when', 'if', 'as' и 'though':

- 1. When first shown at the exhibition, the telephone attracted very little attention.
 - 2. When completed, the parts were transported to the assembly shop.
 - 3. When discussed the proposal will be finally approved.
 - 4. When explained the rule appeared quite simple.
 - 5. When collected the data were fed into the computer.
 - 6. If done properly the work will give good results.
 - 7. If settled the matter will cause no complications.
 - 8. If heated this material loses some of its properties.
 - 9. If found necessary the question will be discussed again.
 - 10. If supported I'll go on with my work.
 - 11. As conducted thoroughly the experiment was a success.
- 12. As written in a foreign language the article could not be easily understood.
 - 13. As transported carelessly some goods were damaged.
 - 14. As approved by everybody, the agreement was signed.
 - 15. I think we now may regard the matter as settled.
 - 16. Though checked several times, the text had a number of mistakes.

- 17. Though pressed for time he didn't hurry.
- 18. Though carefully done the work was a failure.
- 19. Though received in time the data were of no use for further research.
- 20. Though agreed upon the plan requires certain changes.

Ex	. 8. Open the bro	ackets using the appropriate f	form of the Participle.
1.	She went to wo	rk, (to leave)	the child with the nurse.
2.	(To lay)	down on the soft couch, the	child fell asleep at once.
3.	(To wait)	in the hall, he tho	ught over the problem he
was plan	ning to discuss w	rith the old lady.	
4.	He left (to say)	he would be back	k in two hours.
5.	(To write)	in very bad handw	vriting, the letter was dif-
ficult to 1			•
6.	(To write)	his first book, he worked	l endless hours till dawn.
		twenty years abro	
coming h			
_		away from home, he	still felt himself part of
the famil			•
9.	(Not to wish)	to discuss the	problem, he changed the
conversa			
10	. (To reject)	by the publishe	r, the story was returned
to the aut			•
11.	. (To reject)	by publishers	several times, the story
	pted by a weekly		,
		in the rece	eption room, he thought
	t he would say.		
	_	he peak at dusk, (to leave)	their camp
	first light.	•	
	•	ent out into the city (to leave	their
	he left-luggage d		, <u> </u>
		a note with	h the porter, he said he
	back in a half ar		1
	. (To write)		language, the book was
difficult 1			
		his first book, he us	ed his own experiences.
18	. (To be)	away so long he was h	appy to be coming back.
			
Ex	. 9. Fill in the	blanks with the Passive Pa	erticiples of the verb in
brackets.			
1.	a) I cannot forget	t the story (to tell)	by him.
	b) They listened	breathlessly to the story (to	tell) by the
old man.			

2. a) One can't fail to notice the progress (to make	e) by
our group during the last term.	· ,———
b) These are only a few of the attempts now (to	o make)
to improve the methods of teaching adult students.	
3. a) We could hear the noise of furniture (to move)	upstairs.
b) For a moment they sat silent (to move)	by the story.
4. a) The monument (to erect) on	this square has been re-
cently unveiled.	
b) The monument (to erect) on t	nis square will be soon
unveiled.	

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences paying attention to the words with the suffix '-ed'.

- 1. The plan accepted required many changes.
- 2. The data analyzed contained some errors.
- 3. The equipment transported proved to be damaged.
- 4. The article mentioned described recently discovered phenomena.
- 5. The instruments produced seemed unreliable.
- 6. The documents presented were carefully studied.
- 7. The article presented a review of materials studied.
- 8. The changed conditions caused decrease of goods produced.
- 9. The machine-tools adjusted worked properly.
- 10. The engineer adjusted the device and tested the machine-tool installed.
- 11. The machine-tool installed was tested by the engineer.
- 12. The machine-tool tested continued working.
- 13. We are satisfied with the quality of presented samples.
- 14. The machines ordered were delivered in time.
- 15. The machines delivered needed repair.

Ex. 11. Translate the sentences into Russian.

- 1. Concealed talent brings no reputation. (D. Erasmus)
- 2. A thing well said will be wise in all languages. (I. Dryden)
- 3. The idea as stated by the scientist in not of any interest.
- 4. The instrument used is very reliable.
- 5. A fault confessed is half redressed.
- 6. Some theoretical consideration only touched upon in the last chapter will be considered in detail in another work.
 - 7. The lecture followed by a film was very interesting.
 - 8. The method used facilitated the procedure.
 - 9. Written in pencil the article was difficult to read.
 - 10. Once said a word cannot be unsaid.
 - 11. United we stand, divided we fall.
 - 12. Danger foreseen is half avoided.

- 13. One cannot shut one's eyes to things not seen with eyes. (Ch. Morgan)
- 14. The results obtained disagreed with earlier data.
- 15. The set of basic operations provided is not, in general, suited to the execution of commonly needed procedures.
 - 16. It was a standpoint shared by many philosophers.
 - 17. Ethics is concerned with moral duties of a man.
 - 18. Science accumulates examples foreseen and verified through practice.
 - 19. Ethics is closely connected with feeling.
 - 20. This expedition failed because undertaken in winter.

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences.

- 1. Conflicting reports have been published.
- 2. A number of animals living in the soil feed on plants.
- 3. Beauty of face is a frail ornament, a passing flower, a momentary brightness belonging only to the skin. (J. Moliere)
 - 4. (When) reading books and make notes.
 - 5. This universal motor was adopted (as) being more economical.
 - 6. Water, having weight I occupying space, is a form of matter.
 - 7. We have used the simpler method eliminating questioning.
 - 8. Pride, the never-failing vice of fools. (A. Pope)
 - 9. Coming events cast their shadows before them.
 - 10. What is a friend? A single soul dwelling in two bodies. (Aristotle)
- 11. Another factor influencing the level of detail is the progress reporting requirements.
- 12. Using the energy of the atom we produce electric energy at atomic power plants.
- 13. Conversion from one oxidation state to another can be accomplished readily by common oxidizing and reducing agents.
 - 14. The empirical evidence is lacking here.
 - 15. This requirement is not restricting.
- 16. System design progresses through several stages, becoming more detailed in each stage.
 - 17. Growing science accumulates examples of quantitative relations.
 - 18. When being pure, water is a colourless liquid.
 - 19. This tube is very similar to others, save being a bit wider.
- 20. The chemical and physical properties of these dimmers are being studied.

Ex. 13. Choose the appropriate form of the Participles.

- 1. That night, (went, going, having gone) up to his room he thought of his unpleasant duty.
 - 2. She smiled (remembered, to remember, remembering) the joke.

- 3. (Seeing, having seen, to see) so little in the country, I am afraid I cannot answer all your questions.
- 4. A new road will soon be built (*connecting*, *having connected*, *to connect*) the plant with the railway station.
- 5. (To arrive, arriving, having arrived) two days before the conference he had a lot of time to see Edinburgh.
- 6. I felt very tired (being worked, having worked, work) the whole day in the sun.
 - 7. He speaks like a man (taking, takes) his opinion of everything.
- 8. (Not having known, knowing not, didn't know, not knowing) that she could trust them she didn't know what to do.
- 9. (Boughting, having bought, buying) a pair of gloves we moved to the shoe department.
 - 10. She left (told, telling, having told) us all she had found out.
- 11. The child (*leaving*, *left*, *leaves*) alone in the large room began screaming.
- 12. (Bitten twice, biting twice, having been bitten twice), the postman refused to deliver our letters unless we chained our dog up.
- 13. The centre of the cotton industry is Manchester *(connecting, connected)* with Liverpool by a canal.
- 14. The story (tells, told, is telling) by the old captain made the young girl cry.
- 15. He didn't doubt that the information (receiving, has received, received) by morning mail was of great interest for his competitors.
- 16. The equipment (had installing, installing, installed) in the shop is rather sophisticated.
- 17. We've got a great variety of products, which are in great demand. Here are some samples (sent, sanding, been sent, sended) to our distributors last month.
- 18. The methods (applies, applying, applied, applyed) in the building of the new metro stations proved to be efficient.
- 19. She warmed over the dinner that she (cooking, had cooked, has cooked) the day before.
- 20. (Having been weakened, weakened, weaking, had weaked) by successive storms, the bridge was no longer safe.

3.3. Независимый причастный оборот (The Absolute Participle Construction)

Причастие с относящимися к нему словами образует причастный оборот.

Обстоятельственные причастные обороты могут быть зависимыми и независимыми. Когда обстоятельственный причастный оборот относится к подлежащему предложения, он называется зависимым:

Inspecting the motor, the engineer made some valuable remarks. — Осматривая мотор, инженер сделал несколько ценных замечаний.

Having done a given number of operations, the machine stopped automatically. – **Проделав заданное количество операций**, машина автоматически остановилась.

Когда причастие входит в состав **независимого причастного оборота**, оно выражает действие не самого подлежащего, а существительного (или местоимения), стоящего перед ним. Таким образом, такой причастный оборот не зависит от подлежащего в предложении.

Независимый причастный оборот в тексте можно узнать по следующим признакам:

- 1. перед причастием стоит существительное без предлога или место-имение в именительном падеже;
 - 2. независимый причастный оборот всегда отделен запятой.

На русский язык независимый причастный оборот переводится:

1. придаточным обстоятельственным предложением времени или причины с союзами когда, после того как, поскольку, так как и др., когда сам причастный оборот стоит в начале предложения:

Some new devices having been obtained, the researchers could make more complex experiments. — После того как были получены новые приборы, исследователи смогли делать более сложные опыты.

It being late, we decided to stop working. — Так как было поздно, мы решили прекратить работу.

2. самостоятельным предложением бессоюзным или с союзами *причем*, *a*, *u*, *но*, если причастный оборот стоит в конце предложения:

The installation was automatized last year, its capacity rising by 25 per cent. — Эта установка была автоматизирована в прошлом году, и ее про-изводительность увеличилась на 25 %.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences with the Absolute Participle Construction from English into Russian.

- 1. The weather being fine, we decided to go to the country.
- 2. The director being away, we had to wait for him.
- 3. The preparations being completed, we started the experiment.
- 4. The population increasing, housing construction should be paid much attention to.
 - 5. The temperature rising, the speed of molecules also rises.
 - 6. The pressure removed, the body returns to its original volume.
 - 7. The experiment finished, we may have a break.
 - 8. The problem having been settled, he could go on with his work.
 - 9. The letter having been delayed, the news came to us too late.
 - 10. The work having been done, they went home.
- 11. Specialists use computers widely, the latter helping them in many spheres.
- 12. He is a great scientist, his experiments and pedagogical activities being closely linked.
 - 13. He translated the poem, his translation being a success.
- 14. There are different kinds of transport, the railroad being the most important.
- 15. The journal was brought yesterday, his article being published on the first page.
 - 16. We had several lectures today, the last one being on physics.
- 17. New machine-tools were delivered to the pant, all of them being in good order.
 - 18. The metal was heated, its temperature reaching the melting point.
 - 19. The examination was over, most students getting good marks.
- 20. The experiment was a success, our group achieving the necessary results.

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences with the Absolute Participle Construction.

- 1. Many men preceded Newton in the field of mechanics, perhaps the most outstanding being Galileo.
- 2. Red phosphorus being a more stable form, its reaction is much less violent.
 - 3. The fuel exhausted, the engine stopped.
- 4. Probably the first metals used by man were gold, silver, and copper, these metals being found in nature in the native or metallic state.
- 5. Mars has two satellites, Demos ("Horror") and Phobos ("Fear"), both discovered during the favourable opposition of 1877.

- 6. A magnet being broken in two, each piece becomes a magnet with its own pair of poles.
- 7. Many technical and scientific problems having been solved, the first space flight could be realized.
 - 8. An electron leaving the surface, the metal becomes positively charged.
- 9. The plant supplied with good raw materials, the quality of products has been much improved.

Ex. 16. Choose the right form using the Absolute Participle Construction.

- 1. He (was thinking, is thinking), his eyes closed.
- 2. The soldiers (were aiming, aiming) at the rebels, their fingers on triggers.
- 3. The man was drinking vodka with his hands (were shaking, shaking).
- 4. The children (were eating, eating) the desert, with their noses in cream.
- 5. The day (was wonderful, wonderful) with a breeze blowing from the sea.
- 6. The maniac (was questioned, questioned) with his hands tied.
- 7. (Lighted out, lights out), they went to sleep.
- 8. The computer programmer was working with his eyes (fixed, were fixed) on the screen.
 - 9. After the "wild" party he lay on the sofa with his head (ached, aching).
- 10. The young man walked down the street "walkman" (playing, played) music.

Ex. 17. Replace the clauses with the Absolute Participial Construction.

	Model:	As the book was translated into Russian, it could be read by everybody. – The book being translated into Russian it could be read by everybody.
1 _{vz} _	1. As we	were given dictionaries, we managed to translate the article easi-
1y. ₋	2. As soo	on as I have done my homework, I'll go for a walk. –

3. As soon as I have bought the book, I will begin reading it. –
4. As there was a severe storm at sea, the steamer couldn't leave the port. –
 5. As it was Sunday, the library was closed. –
5.715 it was builday, the norary was closed.
6. As the weather was fine, they went for a walk. –
7. As the professor was ill, the lecture was put off. –

3.4. Абсолютный причастный оборот с предлогом (The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction)

Абсолютный причастный оборот с предлогом отличается от независимого причастного оборота лишь тем, что вводится в предложение при помощи предлога with. Данная конструкция обычно имеет функции обстоятельства образа действия. Однако это очень формальная конструкция, и она используется очень редко. Переводится данный оборот на русский язык отдельным или придаточным предложением:

The captain was standing on deck with the pipe being in his mouth. — Капитан стоял на палубе с трубкой во рту. (Капитан стоял на палубе; трубка была у него во рту. Капитан стоял на палубе, держа трубку во рту.)

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences.

- 1. With Mrs. Jones going to New York, Mr. Smith took up her position.
- 2. The total value of Japan's export increased in 1993 as compared with 1992, with foodstuffs and manufactured goods occupying an important place in the exports of the country.
- 3. With agricultural surpluses in the USA rapidly increasing and exports declining, the agricultural situation in that country is becoming extremely tense.
- 4. With the shipping strike in the United States still going on, arrivals of American cotton in Liverpool were rather small.
- 5. The London market for Manila hemp was quiet, with demand from Western Europe restricted by the shortage of dollars for purchase.

3.5. Объектный причастный оборот с причастием настоящего времени (The Object Participial Construction with Participle I)

Объектный причастный оборот – сочетание определенных глаголов с некоторыми формами причастия. Этот оборот выполняет в предложении функцию сложного дополнения.

Объектный причастный оборот с причастием настоящего времени состоит из глаголов чувственного восприятия (see, hear, feel, watch, notice), существительного в общем падеже или местоимения в объектном падеже + причастие настоящего времени. В переводе этого оборота всегда присутствуют союзы *что* или *как*:

I heard her singing once. – Однажды я слышал, как она noem (пела).

В этом обороте возможно употребление Present Participle Passive:

I like to watch roads being cleaned at night. — Mне нравится наблю-дать, как по ночам моют(ся) дороги.

Тренировочные упражнения

x. 19. Put the verbs in brackets in the s	uitable form using the Object
oial Constructions with Participle I.	
. We saw Jack (to go) home	e, but did not come up to him.
. I did not see him (to jump)	off the bridge. It must
. Brazilian carnival is a great festivity!	It was absolutely fantastic to
ll those people (to dance)	•
. They heard their favourite song (to play)	on the radio.
. The boy did not notice his friend (to hit)	the ball and
the window.	
. Last year I saw the Niagara. It was ama	azing to see so much water (to
down.	
. I felt his anger (to grow)	slowly.
. We hear him (to drop)	something heavy on the floor.
0. The citizens saw the plane (to crash)	on the
the town. Then there came a big explosion	
	Ex. 19. Put the verbs in brackets in the social Constructions with Participle I. We saw Jack (to go) home. My boss was so excited, that I noticed how the second in the second

3.6. Субъектный причастный оборот (The Subjective Participial Construction)

Субъектный причастный оборот также употребляется с глаголами чувственного восприятия, но только с причастием настоящего времени в пассивном залоге. В предложении этот оборот выполняет функцию сложного подлежащего:

They were seen kissing on the street. — Их видели целующимися на улице. (Видели, как они целовались на улице.)

Кроме традиционных глаголов чувственного восприятия в эту группу входит глагол **find**:

She was found lying on the ground. — Она была обнаружена лежащей на земле.

А вот при наличии в субъектном причастном обороте глаголов умственной деятельности (think, consider, know, understand, believe) а

также глагола **find** в пассивном залоге употребляется причастие прошедшего времени:

The meeting is considered finished. — Собрание считается законченным.

Субъектный причастный оборот обычно переводится на русский язык неопределенно-личным предложением.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 20. Fill in the gaps with the verbs in the box using the Subjective Participal Construction.

	2 0	nished, smoking, buying, , ravaged, lying
1.	The pupil was seen	cigarettes on the street.
2.	The tornado was believed	<u></u>
3.	She was thought happily	·
4.	They were watched	drugs.
5.	The town was found	
6.	The fire was watched	•
7.	The planes were	approaching.
8.	The purse was found	on the grass.
9.	The war was considered	·
10.	The car was	crashed.

3.7. Объектный причастный оборот с причастием прошедшего времени (The Object Participial Construction with Participle II)

С объектным причастным оборотом после глаголов чувственного восприятия может употребляться не только Participle I, но и Participle II. Этот оборот также выполняет функцию сложного дополнения. Действие, передаваемое этим оборотом, аналогично действию объектного оборота с инфинитивом. Сказуемое предложения с данным оборотом обычно не имеет форму Present Simple или Present Continuous:

We heard his name mentioned several times at the meeting. — Мы слышали, как (что) его имя было несколько раз упомянуто на собрании.

В рамках объектного причастного оборота после глаголов, выражающих желание (want, would like) и побуждение к действию (get, have), употребляется Participle II. Этот оборот нельзя передать по-другому, через

простое придаточное предложение. Аналогов этого причастного оборота, как и некоторых других, в русском языке не имеется:

My boss wants the work finished as soon as possible. — Мой босс хочет, чтобы работа была закончена как можно скорее.

После глаголов умственной деятельности в активном залоге употребляется причастие прошедшего времени:

We thought him lost in the forest. — Mы думали, что он потерялся в лесу.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 21. Choose the right variant using the Object Participial Constructions with Participle II.

- 1. Boss wants this letter (spent, spending) immediately.
- 2. I believe this war (loosing, lost) to us.
- 3. Let's get all the windows (opened, opening). It is rather stuffy here.
- 4. Your room looks so boring! Let's have the walls *(painting, painted)* orange.
 - 5. I would like this old furniture (taken, being taken) out of my room.
 - 6. He thought the gas (turning, turned) off and left the house.
 - 7. My wife wants to have her hair (doing, done) before going to the party.
 - 8. I think we should get the car (being fixed, fixed) and hit the road.
 - 9. Mother wants the flat (cleaned, cleaning) before the guests arrive.
 - 10. He got all his things (packing, packed). He was ready for the journey.

Обзорные упражнения

	Ex. 22. Complete the situation using 'have smth done'. 1. Sue is at the hairdresser's at the moment. She
•	2. Ann's watch has been broken; she took it to a jeweler's. Now it is
	ng. Ann
	3. – What are the workmen doing in your garden? – Oh, I
	·
	4 Can I see the holiday photographs you took? - I'm afraid not, I
	·
-	Ex. 23. Translate from Russian into English.
	1. Прибыв до открытия конференции, они успели осмотреть город. –
	2. Она сидела и улыбалась. –

	3.	Этот человек, сидящий у окна, вчера сделал интересный доклад. –
	4.	Когда я смотрел этот фильм, я вспоминал свое детство. –
язык.		Я прочел несколько книг этого автора, переведенных на русский
	_	Люди, ожидавшие вас, только что ушли
	7.	Узнав его поближе, я понял, какой это хороший человек. –
	8.	Человек, только что стоявший здесь, ушел
	9.	Внимательно прочитав доклад, я нашел в нем несколько ошибок
	10.	Будучи очень расстроенным, он решил уйти не прощаясь. –
		

Ex. 24. Translate into Russian.

- 1. The idea can be pronounced true if tested by experience.
- 2. When speaking about the new projects the lecturer showed a map.
- 3. A barometer is an instrument measuring atmospheric pressure.
- 4. Unless otherwise stated the value will be considered constant.
- 5. The other conditions being equal, the acceleration will be the same.
- 6. We carried out a series of reactions the raw materials brought from their laboratory.
 - 7. With water being cooled, the rate of the reaction was low.
- 8. Performance observations were recorded, with particular attention on the variables.
 - 9. We know the problem having been solved long ago.
 - 10. We know him working at this problem since 1990.
- 11. We consider the parameter as utilized to limit the number of questions asked.
 - 12. We have the device repaired.
 - 13. This phenomenon is postulated as having arisen from excessive heating.
- 14. The problem was recognized by many scientists as being of great importance.
- 15. The method considered as involving two stages has been tested at a pilot plant.

Ex. 25. Translate into English.

1.	Я показал ему список литературь	I, использованной дл	ія написания
реферата	. –		

2. Человек, писавший эту статью, хорошо разбирается в проблемах
использования переработанного сырья
3. Потеряв самообладание, он не мог принять разумное решение
4. Повернув направо, мы увидели широкую поляну. –
5. Он показал нам список товаров, экспортируемых их фирмой
6. Изучив вопрос детально, он смог ответить на все вопросы, заданные профессором. –
7. На следующей неделе мы будем испытывать устройство, разра- ботанное по современным нанотехнологиям. —
8. Он тихо вышел из комнаты, не желая нарушить её чуткий утренний сон. –
9. Студенты, окончившие перевод статьи, могут сдать работы и по- кинуть аудиторию. –
10. Не получив ответа от партнера, мы решили написать ему еще одно письмо. –
11. Я прочитал статью, содержащую сведения о многомиллионных сделках на нефтяном рынке. –
12. Во время защиты диссертации я обратил внимание на профессора, сидевшего на последнем ряду и внимательно писавшего что-то. –
13. Будучи очень рассеянным, он сделал несколько ошибок, переписывая текст. —
14. Ученые, принимавшие участие в исследовательской экспедиции в Антарктику, были награждены правительственными наградами и удостоены научных званий. —
15. Зная его очень хорошо, я мог рекомендовать его как очень ответственного работника. —
16. Все финансовые обязательства, выдаваемые внешнеторговыми организациями, должны быть подписаны руководителем и главным бух-

галтером. —
17. Споры, возникающие между внешнеторговыми организациями и иностранными корпорациями, разрешаются в арбитражном суде. —
18. Вы найдете отчет в прикрепленном файле. –
19. Обращаем ваше внимание на последний пункт договора, предусматривающий обязанности сторон. —
20. Мы не можем ориентироваться на информацию, полученную из сомнительных источников. –
21. Размер страховой премии выше за товары, перевозимые зимой, чем за перевозимые летом. –

Ex. 26. Translate the text defining types of Participle constructions.

When considered dynamically, the biosphere appears an arena of complex interactions among the essential natural cycles of its major constituents, with continuous fluxes of these constituents entering the biosphere, or being released by it. Once brought into being by evolution from an inorganic environment, the living matter has profoundly altered the primitive lifeless earth, gradually changing the composition of the atmosphere, the sea, and the top layers of the solid crust both on land and under the ocean. Since then, if one were to ascribe a single objective to evolution, it would be the perpetuation of life. This is the single end which the entire strategy of evolution is focused on, with evolution dividing the resources of any location, including its input of energy, among an ever increasing number of different kinds of users, which we recognize as plant and animal species.

TEMA 4. ГЕРУНДИЙ (THE GERUND)

Герундий – это неличная форма глагола, обладающая одновременно свойствами существительного и глагола. Герундий выражает процесс действия.

4.1. Способы образование герундия

Существуют простые и сложные формы герундия (табл. 4.1). Характерным признаком герундия является наличие перед ним:

- 1. предлога;
- 2. притяжательного местоимения;
- 3. существительного в притяжательном или общем падеже.

Формы герундия

Группа	Active	Passive	Действие
Indefinite	reading	being	Выражает действие, одновременное
		read	с действием глагола-сказуемого,
			или действие, относящееся к будущему
Perfect	having	having Выражает действие, предшествующее	
	read	been read	действию глагола-сказуемого

Gerund Indefinite Active образуется путем прибавления -ing к основе глагола. Другие формы герундия образуются по правилам образования временных форм.

4.2. Функции герундия

В предложении герундий может быть:

1. Подлежащим; переводится существительным или неопределенной формой глагола:

Measuring cargo weights has no difficulties. — **Измерение** веса груза не представляет трудностей.

2. Частью сказуемого; переводится существительным или неопределенной формой глагола:

One of the effects of transportation is **handling** of cargo. — Одним из действий транспортировки является **обработка** груза.

3. Дополнением, прямым или предложным; переводится существительным, неопределенной формой глагола или дополнительным придаточным предложением:

He likes **reading**. – Он любит **читать**.

Thank you for **coming**. – Благодарю вас за то, что вы **пришли**.

- 4. Определением; имеются два случая употребления герундия в функции определения:
- а) герундий стоит перед определяемым словом (переводится прилагательным или существительным):

a smoking room — курительная комната (т.е. комната для курения); a boiling point — точка кипения;

b) герундий с предлогом стоит после определяемого слова (переводится существительным):

The idea of **utilizing** the energy of oceans and seas for man's needs is not new. — Идея (какая?) использования энергии океанов и морей для нужд человека не нова.

5. Обстоятельством (всегда с предлогом). Употребление герундия с предлогом представлено в табл. 4.2.

Таблица 4.2 Употребление герундия с предлогом

Герундий с предлогом	Перевод
in	1. деепричастием настоящего времени:
in designing the vessel	проектируя судно;
	2. сочетанием предлога <i>при</i> + существительное:
	при проектировании судна
on, upon	1. деепричастием прошедшего времени:
on (upon) reaching deck	достигнув палубы;
	2. сочетанием <i>при (после)</i> + существительное:
	при достижении палубы
before, after	1. сочетанием перед (после) + существительное:
before (after) handling	перед (после) обработкой груза;
cargo	2. придаточным обстоятельственным предложе-
	нием:
	до того (после того) как произойдет обра-
	ботка груза
by	1. деепричастием:
by creating new transport	создавая новые виды транспорта;
	2. сочетанием путем (с помощью) + существи-
	тельное:
	путем создания новых видов транспорта
without	1. сочетанием не + деепричастие:
without preheating	не нагревая предварительно;
	2. сочетанием без + существительное:
	без предварительного нагрева

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences paying attention to the Gerund.

а) в функции подлежащего:

- 1. Travelling abroad can be very interesting.
- 2. Going into every detail is of no use.
- 3. Keeping strict hours of meals must do you a lot of good.
- 4. Collecting postage stamps was his hobby.
- 5. Reading aloud can help you to improve pronunciation.
- 6. Making a program for the computer will be the next question of the discussion.

- 7. Acquiring knowledge is a long and hard process.
- 8. Pulling a rubber band increases its length.
- 9. Measuring the temperature was necessary for our further work.
- 10. Solving difficult problems is a pleasure for a good scientist.
- 11. Is it any good crying?
- 12. It is no use discussing the matter again.
- 13. It isn't worth while repairing the engine.
- 14. It is useless speaking to him; he would not listen to anybody.
- 15. It was quite unexpected finding you there.

b) в функции части сказуемого:

- 1. My greatest pleasure is reading science fiction.
- 2. The main point of the discussion is applying the new methods.
- 3. The purpose of the experiment was studying the new substances.
- 4. Our aim was preventing troubles.
- 5. Their task is collecting and processing data.
- 6. She stopped answering my letters.
- 7. Why do you avoid seeing me?
- 8. He likes inviting friends to his house.
- 9. He hates reminding people of their duties or being reminded of his.
- 10. The water requires filtering.
- 11. The idea is worth considering.
- 12. He was busy looking through the morning mail.
- 13. I cannot help accepting the obvious fact.
- 14. Our research group finished recording the results of the experiment.
- 15. We have just begun programming the computer.
- 16. Has it stopped raining?
- 17. We must go on working.
- 18. Everybody enjoyed exchanging opinions.
- 19. The camera wanted adjusting.
- 20. You'd better give up smoking.

с) в функции дополнения:

- 1. You never mentioned speaking to them on the subject.
- 2. Do you mind telling him everything?
- 3. I don't remember ever seeing you.
- 4. Who suggested discussing this question?
- 5. I don't mind taking part in the conference.
- 6. We insist on sending him there at once.7. Excuse me for giving you so much trouble.
- 8. He is proud of being an academician.
- 9. The boy was punished for missing classes.
- 10. She felt sorry for being rude to me.

- 11. They accused me of deceiving them.
- 12. He never thought of going abroad.
- 13. You should prevent him from taking such a dangerous step.
- 14. I am not used to being treated in such a way.
- 15. Did you succeed in doing business?
- 16. They were surprised at hearing the news.
- 17. Our work resulted in studying new phenomena.
- 18. Who is responsible for making the experiment?
- 19. I found them engaged in assembling machine-tools.
- 20. Does anyone object to launching an investigation?

d) в функции определения:

- 1. He showed no sign of knowing them.
- 2. He had a bad habit of joking at the wrong moment.
- 3. The idea of using the new substance belongs to my scientific adviser.
- 4. He displayed no interest in solving the problem.
- 5. What is the most effective method of transmitting information?
- 6. There is no other way of getting out of the trouble.
- 7. There are various instruments for taking measurements.
- 8. The process of producing metal articles is rather long.
- 9. I have no intention of doing this work any longer.
- 10. There is no possibility of repairing the engine.

е) в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. In discussing the problem they touched upon some very interesting items.
- 2. After looking through the letters and sorting those out the secretary registered them.
 - 3. He likes to do things without disturbing anyone.
 - 4. Before writing an article I studied the subject thoroughly.
 - 5. On coming to the office he started looking through the morning mail.
 - 6. You can learn English by reading English books.
 - 7. Numbers can be multiplied by using multiplication tables.
 - 8. On hearing the telephone call he rushed to the telephone.
 - 9. You can't learn a foreign language without knowing your own one.
- 10. Before coming to any conclusion you should thoroughly analyze all the facts.

Ex. 2. Read the sentences, state the function of the Gerund.

- 1. After *buying* a new car we all went to the restaurant.
- 2. We enjoyed *drinking* beer every weekend.
- 3. It is no use *reading* in the dark.
- 4. In case of *finding* that man, call the police.

- 5. He entered the house by *breaking* the window.
- 6. Russian masters built their houses without *using* nails.
- 7. Before *going* home he washed lipstick off his jacket.
- 8. Despite all the difficulties she kept on *smiling*.
- 9. I am thinking of *changing* my job.
- 10. Sleeping after lunch is the most pleasant thing in the world.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets using the Gerund.

Mo	odel: His hair is very long, it no	eeds <i>cutting</i> .
1.	This shirt is quite clean; it doesn't	want (to wash) yet.
2.	The grass in the garden is very dry	; it wants (to water) badly.
3.	The baby's crying; I think he needs	s (to feed)
4.	The house is old, and it badly want	ts (to paint)
5.	The windows are very dirty; they r	need (to clean)
6.	I know my hair wants (to cut)	need (to clean) but I never have time
to go to t	he hairdresser's.	
7.	The famous man didn't need (to in	troduce) himself.
8.	Her shoes have a hole in them; the	y want <i>(to mend)</i> .
9.	The floor is covered with dust; it n	eeds (to sweep) s, it needs (to tidy) The
10	. – You should tidy the room. – Yes	, it needs <i>(to tidy)</i> The
flowers v	want <i>(to water)</i> , and th	ne shelves want (to dust)
Fy	c. 4. Open the brackets using the co	rrect form of the Gerund
		the road, but he didn't
remembe	er (to knock down)	the road, but he didn't
2.	I am still hungry in spite of <i>(to eat.)</i>	four sandwiches.
3.	He got into the house by (to climb	through a window,
	(to see) by any	
		o work) late.
5.	He complained of (to give)	a very small room at the
back of the		
		n spite of (to bite) twice.
7.	The baby went to sleep a few minu	ites after (to feed)
8.	The little girl never gets tired of (to	her mother ques-
tions, but	t her mother often gets tired of (to as	sk) so many questions.
9.	Mary was chosen to fill the vacance	ey. She was very pleased (to choose)
10	I always treat people politely and l	I insist on (to treat)
politely.		· /
	. The boy was very thirsty in spite of	of (to drink) a big cup
of tea.		

Ex. 5. Replace the italicized parts of the sentence or clauses by the Gerundial phrases.

Model:	He said all this <i>and he did not even smile</i> . He said all this <i>without even smiling</i> .
1. We susp	pected that the boy was lying. –
2. Nobody	could tell when they were going to return. –
3. She did	not want to make an effort. –
	essary to brush the coat. –
5. It was it	mpossible to reason with her when she felt like this. –
6. She was	s very clever; she could turn an old dress into a new one
	ldn't say whether he meant to buy the car before he took it for a
8. Let's go	out for dinner. I don't feel well enough to cook anything. —
9. I don't l	ike the idea that I should do it all. –
1. When	lace the parts in italicized type by the Gerundial phrases. she saw him she stopped reading at once and put the letter away t explain anything. —
2. In this	thick fog she was afraid that she might be knocked down
	ferred to keep silent for fear that he might say something inop-
4. He felt	much better after he had been operated on
5. He wa talented playwri	s not only the author of brilliant short stories, but he was also a ght. —
	he was writing his report, he remembered that he had forgotten e facts. —

	7. Once he gets into his head an idea of doing something, it is impossible him out of it. —
	8. When the girl entered the room, she glanced a little wonderingly at the of the three men. –
	O. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary and run-down that he hated ught that he would have to live there. —
	10. You will do nothing but irritate him if you will nag him all the time.
	1. That I was on the spot was a bit of luck for him. –
	2. Samuel Griffiths came back from Chicago on this particular day, after concluded several agreements there. –
using	Ex. 7. Complete the following by translating what is given in brackets the Gerund. Insert prepositions where necessary. 1. They prided themselves (что первыми изобрели этот прибор)
	2. They accused him (в том, что он предал своих друзей)
	3. I can't recall (чтобы меня с ним когда-нибудь знакомили) I even don't remember (что видел его)
ну по	4. He couldn't get used (к левостороннему движению / водить маши- певой стороне)
	5. She was quite unconscious (что пришла в неудачный момент)
	б. Excuse me (что я вошел не постучав)
	7. I'm really ashamed (что так вел себя на вечере)
	3. She denied (что обещала заглянуть к нам)
	 We hope he will succeed (найти свое место в жизни)
	10. Why do you avoid (смотреть на меня)?
	1. From the age of four, I had been used to (делать все по-своему)
	2. I was not used to (когда меня развлекают дамы)
	. 13. How proud I was of (что изобрел это замечательное устройство)

14. I was tired of always (носить чужую одежду)
 15. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for (что была так груба
вечером)
16. He's merely used to (что за ним ухаживают)
 17. He was grateful to Finch for (что уговорил его зайти)
 18. But they are used to (иметь дело с настоящими бизнесменами)

4.3. Сложные формы герундия

Indefinite Gerund Passive обычно переводится глаголом в настоящем времени:

We knew nothing about **her being sent** to Moscow. — Мы ничего не знали о том, **что ее посылают** в Москву.

Perfect Gerund Active и Perfect Gerund Passive обычно переводятся глаголом в прошедшем времени:

The engineer mentioned **his having tested** these cargo handling facilities with an entirely satisfactory result. — Инженер упомянул о том, **что он испытал** эти устройства для обработки груза с вполне удовлетворительным результатом.

We knew nothing of **her having been** sent to Moscow. — Мы ничего не знали о том, **что ее послали** в Москву.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 8. Translate paying attention to the Complex Gerund.

- 1. Due to the ice-breaker *being equipped* with up-to-date navigation devices, it will be able to sail in any weather.
- 2. In addition to its engine *being* very powerful, its hull is made stronger and heavier than that of a usual ice-breaker.
- 3. Because of the ship *being driven* by an atomic engine there are no stokers on it but push-button operators.
- 4. After the construction of the atomic ice-breaker *having been completed*, the Russian fleet got the most powerful ice-breaker in the world.
- 5. We know of the new atomic ice-breaker *being able to* force its way through ice of considerable thickness.
- 6. Due to the ship *being* much more lightly *loaded*, its hull can be made much stronger.

4.4. Герундиальный оборот (The Gerundial Construction)

Герундий с относящимися к нему словами образует герундиальный оборот. Особое внимание следует уделить переводу герундиальных оборотов с предшествующим притяжательным местоимением или существительным в притяжательном падеже. Герундиальный оборот в этом случае переводится придаточным предложением с союзами что; то, что; о том, чтобы; в том, что, причем герундий в русском предложении становится сказуемым этого придаточного предложения. Притяжательное местоимение (или существительное в притяжательном падеже) становится подлежащим придаточного предложения:

We all know of their designing a new type of vessel. — Мы все знаем, что они проектируют новый тип судна.

Smirnov's taking part in the development of the new cooling system was of great help to us. — **To, что Смирнов принял участие** в усовершенствовании новой системы охлаждения, очень помогло нам.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 9. Translate the sentences paying attention to the complex forms of the Gerund and the Gerundial Construction.

- 1. On being told the news she was taken aback.
- 2. Do you mind being examined the first?
- 3. I was annoyed at being interrupted every moment.
- 4. The equipment must go through a number of tests before being installed.
- 5. On being introduced they easily started talking.
- 6. I don't remember being asked this question.
- 7. I don't remember having been asked this question.
- 8. He was proud of having been awarded the prize.
- 9. The old man could not stand being made a fun of.
- 10. She reproached me for not having kept my promise.
- 11. I remember having seen this actor in another film.
- 12. He reminded me of having once rejected that suggestion.
- 13. He was accused of having distorted the facts.
- 14. He was accused of having been engaged in espionage.
- 15. He was surprised at having been given such a high award.
- 16. His having read the article proves that he takes great interest in the subject.
- 17. We heard of Petrov's having been sent to the ship-building plant as a chief engineer.
 - 18. The news of his having been sent abroad was a surprise to us.
 - 19. We were informed of the ship having arrived at the port.
 - 20. They insisted on the experiment being made to study new phenomena.

4.5. Сравнение герундия и причастия

Формы герундия совпадают с формами причастия. Герундий от причастия отличается:

1. По функции в предложении. Герундий может быть любым членом предложения, причастие — только определением, обстоятельством или частью сказуемого.

Если предложение начинается словом с окончанием **-ing**, следует помнить, что оно может быть герундием в функции подлежащего (если за ним идет глагол-сказуемое) или причастием в функции обстоятельства (если за ним следует подлежащее).

Герундий перед глаголом-сказуемым	Причастие перед подлежащим			
Testing the motor was necessary	Testing the motor, he saw			
Испытать мотор было необходимо	Испытывая мотор , он увидел			

2. По наличию перед герундием притяжательного местоимения или существительного в притяжательном или общем падеже:

We heard of his going to London. — Мы слышали, что он едет в Лондон. We know of truck transportation being the cheapest type of transportation. — Мы знаем, что автоперевозки — самый дешевый вид перевозок.

3. По наличию предлога. Как герундий, так и причастие могут быть обстоятельством и определением. В отличие от причастия, перед герундием в этом случае, как правило, стоит предлог. Перед причастием может стоять союз when или while.

Герундий	Причастие		
в функции с	бстоятельства		
After testing the motor they put down	(While) testing the motor they put down		
the results. – После испытания	the results. – Испытывая мотор, они		
мотора они записали результаты.	записывали результаты		
в функции	определения		
1. There are several ways of produc-	1. The plant producing electricity is very		
ing electricity. — Имеется несколько	powerful. – Эта установка, произво-		
способов производства электри-	дящая электричество , очень мощ-		
чества.	ная.		
2. Герундий может употребляться	2. Причастие перед определяемым		
без предлога, если стоит перед	словом означает, что действие выпол-		
определяемым словом;	няется самим предметом или лицом:		
operating principle – принцип дей-	operating engine – работающий дви-		
ствия;	гатель;		
reading hall — читальный зал	reading man – читающий человек		

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences.

- 1. Learning without thought is labour last, thought without learning is perilous. (Confucius)
 - 2. Seeing is believing.
 - 3. Appetite comes with eating.
 - 4. Upon switching off the current the pressure dropped.
 - 5. Instead of using chlorine, they took bromine.
 - 6. They continued experimenting with the substance.
 - 7. Having access to the code was symbolic.
 - 8. It is worthwhile thinking over the effects I have just described.
- 9. The new opportunities may take life on this planet much more worth living.
 - 10. We were all for starting the experiment at once.
 - 11. It is no use speaking of it.
 - 12. Operating conditions differed widely.
 - 13. They could not help seeing the importance of the process.
 - 14. The purpose of the method is determining system stability.
 - 15. We succeeded in building a flexible system.
 - 16. The architects' aim is applying more plastics for interior decoration.
 - 17. It may well be worthwhile considering the purpose of the investigation.
 - 18. Search theory is potentially applicable to any sort of searching process.
 - 19. Balancing is done by adjusting the position of the rods.
 - 20. Getting several viewpoints is vital.

Обзорные упражнения

Ex. 11. State the function of the words with the '-ing', translate the sentences.

- 1. Sailing the arctic seas is very difficult.
- 2. Ice-breakers *consuming* more fuel than any other type of ship have to be supported by several other vessels for the purpose of *supplying* them with fuel.
- 3. After *having* discovered the secret of the atom scientists began *looking* for the ways of *applying* atomic energy for industrial purposes.
- 4. The atomic ice-breaker is equipped with an atomic installation, its capacity *being* 44,000 h.p.
- 5. The reactor of the ice-breaker will be able to operate without *refueling* for at least a year.
- 6. Besides *being* used for the purpose of *convoying* ships the atomic icebreaker will at the same time be an Arctic research laboratory.

- 7. The ice-breaker will be capable of *sailing* even to the North Pole, *consuming* negligible quantities of nuclear fuel.
- 8. We know of the atomic reactor *being* fed with powdered uranium oxide 238, the latter *being* enriched by an isotope of uranium 235.
- 9. Nuclear fuel will be used in the reactor after its *having* been compressed in the form of rods.
- 10. An ordinary ice-breaker can remain at sea for less than a month, the length of time it can sail *depending* on the quantity of fuel consumed.
- 11. Reliable means of protection *having* been created, people are not affected by radioactive radiation.

			ng the Geru доход снаб	<i>nd.</i> жен атомным двигателем. —
	2. Он мож	сет находит	гься в плав	ании, не пополняя запасов топлива в
	3. Он спо	собен пров	падывать г	туть через лед толщиной более двух
метро	в. –			
	4. Благода	ря тому, ч	то атомный	ледокол имеет более могучие, чем у
обычн	ного ледон	сола, двига	тели, он об	бладает огромной пробивной способ-
ность	ю. –			
			-	незначительное количество топлива,
несмо	тря на то	что его дв	игатели оче	ень мощные. –
	 Why d a) at; We had 	b) in;	c) on.	r returning back home? finding the right candidate for this job.
			*	driving cars.
	a) at:	b) in:	c) on.	
	4. I am so	orry	c) on. keeping yo	ou waiting.
	a) of;	b) for;	c) to.	8
				stealing apples.
		b) for;		
	6. Are yo	u keen	singing	?
		b) on;		,
				repeating the same thing over and
over a			1	: 5
		h) on:	c) with	

	8.	We won	fin	ding the s	hortest	way out.		
	a) i	in;	b) to;	c) by.				
	9.	There is	no point	telli	ng the	truth.		
	a) i	in;	b) to;	c) by.				
	10.	What do	es your motl	her have _		our going to	the club?	
	a) 1	by;	b) against;	c) to.				
	11.	I feel	going	out. Wou	ld you	like to join m	ne?	
	a)]	like;	b) to;	c) for.				
	12.	Touch y	b) to; our toes b) with;	bend	ling you	ır knees.		
	a)]	like;	b) with;	c) withou	ıt.			
	13.	This is a	device	maki	ng coff	ee.		
	a) 1	to;	b) for;	c) of.				
	14.	In spite	faci	ing proble	ms he k	kept on smili	ng.	
	a) 1	to	b) for	c) of.				
	15.	I am sicl	k and tired _	do	oing this	s work.		
			b) for;			1 1 0		
	16.	What wo	ould you say		makıng	; a barbecue?		
	a):	tor;	b) to;	c) of.	. ,.	.1		
	1/.	Iney are	not interest	ed 1	investir	ng their mone	y into our t	ousiness.
			b) at;		1			
					_ neari	ng from you	as soon as p	ossible.
			b) to;					
			se can you do			ng cars?		
			b) like;			: _1_		
	20.	. I am unii	nking	maing	a new	job.		
	a) (01,	b) on;	c) to.				
	Ex	. 14. Trai	nslate into E	nglish.				
				0	оали ре	ктором наш	его универс	ситета. –
				r	Р -	F	· J · p	
	2.	Я не воз		бы они у	нас ос	тановились.	_	
			1	J				
	3.	Они ин	формировал	и нас о т	том, чт	о груз застр	ахован. –	
			1 1 1			15 1	,	
	4.	Я выпол		ькуляции	, о кот	орых просил		 галтер. –
				,	,	1 1	J	1
	5.	Я был о	очень разоч	арован те	м, что	они отказал	пись участ	—— вовать в
грант			•	1			•	
•	6.	Профес	сор настаива	ет на том	, чтобы	глава была	скорректир	——— ювана. –
	7.	Я слыш	ал о том, ч	го их отп	равлян	от на стажиј	ровку в Ан	нглию. —

8. Извините, что я не отправил вам документы сразу же. –
9. Вы можете рассчитывать на то, что они дадут вам точную информацию. –
10. Нет надежды, что они закончат эксперимент до его прихода. –
11. Вы не возражаете, если я прочту ваш перевод вслух? –
12. Мой преподаватель по фонетике настаивает, чтобы я читал как можно больше вслух. –
13. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы установить в вашей лаборатории камеры видеонаблюдения? –
14. Мы настаивали на том, чтобы переговорный процесс начался как можно быстрее. –
Ex. 15. Translate the text defining the Gerund.
AUTOMATION IN THE RESEARCH PROCESS
Our goal should be automating the routine and thereby leave more time
for the creative process.
With that word of caution, let's proceed by arbitrarily dividing research into three stages and examining each stage to find what functions of the research
process might be automated without endangering creativity. Stage one includes
the dreams, the ideas, the exploratory work, selecting the problem, setting the
objective, testing technical feasibility, and searching the literature. Stage two in-
volves planning the experiment, conducting the experiment, checking the alter-
nates, data taking, and data evaluation. Stage three is the solution of the problem – drawing conclusions and making recommendations.
Although there is a great deal of creativity involved in stage one, there are
also opportunities for automation. The burden of keeping up with the literature
even in one's own restricted field is becoming heavier with each passing year.
The mass of reading necessary to make a literature search has increased im-
mensely. Advances in computer technology have made possible storing and quick retrieving essentially all the scientific literature.
Ex. 16. Insert the right preposition 'to', 'into', 'of', 'at', 'from', 'in',
'without'.
 The child persuaded his parents buying a computer. We did not object paying money.
2. We did not object paying money.

3.	Bad weather prevented us	walking in the park.
4.	I am very proud	getting this high-paid job.
5.	They were surprised	finding the dog alive.
6.	My son is good	_ skiing.
7.	I am not interested	listening to your stories.
8.	Our company succeeded	making good quality products.
9.	Our children were disappoi	nted finding pirates' treasure.
10.	We used go	fishing every weekend.

TEMA 5. ОТГЛАГОЛЬНОЕ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE VERBAL NOUN)

Отглагольное существительное образуется путем прибавления к форме инфинитива суффикса-окончания **-ing**: **to meet** *встречать* — **meeting** *встреча*, *собрание*, *митинг*.

В отличие от герундия, отглагольное существительное обладает только свойствами существительного и поэтому:

- 1. употребляется с артиклем;
- 2. может иметь форму множественного числа;
- 3. может определяться прилагательным:

The readings of this device are correct. — **Показания** этого прибора верны.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Analyze the '-ing' forms in the sentences below. State which of them Gerunds are and which Verbal Nouns. Motivate your decision.

- 1. She read the first act between a *fitting* and a rehearsal, made up her mind to play Kate and there was no *persuading* her that the part was too young for her.
- 2. The *whirring* and *banging* of the lift kept her awaken most of the night.
- 3. She kept *repeating* the bright *sayings* of her children to bored friends and relations.
 - 4. She insisted on my *showing* her the letter and *explaining* who Pat was.
- 5. On *getting* home she felt so faint and exhausted that she went to bed without *taking* off her makeup and *creaming* her face.
- 6. On *being* told to her face that she was a liar and a schemer Polly felt like *giggling* and restrained her with difficulty.
 - 7. She broke the *fastening* of the purse in her hurry to get the papers out.
- 8. She looked with distaste at the toilet table. Dust, spilt powder and hair *combings* everywhere.

- 9. You have never learned the way of *treating* children kindly but without undue familiarity.
 - 10. She promised to send me the *cutting* the moment she found it.
 - 11. I could just see a faint *glimmering* of light in the distance.
- 12. For some time she said nothing and we could only hear the *clicking* of her false teeth a certain sign of *growing* irritation.
 - 13. On *being* asked what her plans were he gave a most evasive answer.
 - 14. She lost this job through *falling* ill at the wrong time.
 - 15. Her first big part was Catherine in "The *Taming* of the Shrew".

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences paying attention to the '-ing' forms.

- 1. Reading foreign journals is necessary for an engineer.
- 2. Reading foreign journals you can learn many new facts.
- 3. A student *reading* foreign journals must know the language well.
- 4. I think he is in the library now. He is *reading* foreign journals.
- 5. You can enlarge your vocabulary by *reading* foreign journals.
- 6. I remember *reading* this journal.
- 7. He is proud of *having* read many English books in the original.
- 8. *Having* read many English books in the original, he knows the language perfectly.
 - 9. He has been *reading* the book for two hours already.
- 10. Being read in the original, the book made a great impression on everybody.
 - 11. I don't like your way of *talking*.
 - 12. His time was up, but he still went on *speaking*.
 - 13. Will we have a chance of ever *seeing* you again?
 - 14. I need spectacles for reading.
- 15. Looking back upon that time was like remembering something that had happened long before.
 - 16. Looking back upon that time I thought that all might have been different.
 - 17. She never did a thing without asking somebody's advice.
- 18. The man was *making* a speech not *paying* attention to the attempts to interrupt him.
 - 19. The door stood ajar, and we entered without *knocking*.
 - 20. Not *speaking* the language, he was asked through an interpreter.
 - 21. What language is he *speaking*?
 - 22. He received a letter *informing* him of their new address.
 - 23. There is a visitor *waiting* for you.
 - 24. She smiled to herself as if *remembering* something funny.
- 25. They had tried many other methods, finally *returning* to the initial one.

- 26. On *coming* home he switched on the light and pulled down the curtains.
- 27. When I was *examining* the machine I noticed its engine to be out of order.
 - 28. He insisted on my *speaking* in public.
 - 29. He couldn't help *laughing* when *seeing* me in such a strange dress.
 - 30. *Having* stayed in the country long enough, I know the local customs.
- 31. Being applied in agriculture, such machines will save much time and labour.
 - 32. The party *being* over, everybody went home.
 - 33. He cannot give up *smoking*, this habit *telling* on his health.
- 34. We were informed of the new equipment *having* been delivered to our plant.
 - 35. We heard of our chief engineer *having* been appointed director.

Ex. 3. State which of the sentences with '-ing' forms are the Gerund, the Participle and which the Verbal Noun.

- 1. The boys continued *playing* football.
- 2. He was *looking* at the plane *flying* overhead.
- 3. Watching the playing kittens was great fun for the children.
- 4. Being frightened by the dog, the cat climbed a high fence.
- 5. It is no use *going* there now.
- 6. *Coming* out of the wood, the travellers saw a ruined castle in the distance.
 - 7. My greatest pleasure is *travelling*.
 - 8. *Growing* tomatoes need a lot of sunshine.
- 9. *Growing* corn on his desert island, Robinson Crusoe hoped to eat bread one day.
 - 10. Growing roses takes a lot of care and attention.
 - 11. Just imagine his *coming* first in the race!
 - 12. The children were tired of *running*.
 - 13. Wishing to learn to skate, she bought herself a pair of skates.
- 14. *Having* prepared all the necessary equipment, they began the experiment.
 - 15. Mary will stop for a few days at the seaside before *going* back home.
 - 16. While *translating* the text I looked up many words in the dictionary.
 - 17. I usually help mother by *washing* the dishes and *doing* the rooms.
 - 18. Entering the room, I saw my friends smiling at me.
 - 19. Instead of *phoning* his friend, he went to see him.

Ex. 4. Read and translate in the following order: a) the sentences with the Gerund; b) the sentences with the Verbal Noun.

- 1. Sleeping is necessary.
- 2. We felt so disappointed at your having missed nearly half the programme.
 - 3. The building of this house will cost much money.
 - 4. Are you dressed for going out?
 - 5. I hate the idea of doing it once more.
 - 6. Then came a general lighting of pipes and cigars.
 - 7. But you don't mind being asked to help us, do you?
- 8. The forest resounded with the hooting of owls and the howling of wolves.
 - 9. She blamed herself for having been a dull companion.
 - 10. The singing of those beautiful folk songs impressed me greatly.
- 11. Your having written is really no excuse for your not coming on the day fixed.
 - 12. Such doings can hardly be explained.
 - 13. The motor was carefully examined before starting.
 - 14. I am very pleased to meet you after hearing so much about you.
 - 15. Your hair wants cutting.
 - 16. I will look forward to seeing you again.
 - 17. It was no use talking about it any longer.

Ex. 5. Match the Russian and the English sentences.

- 1. Going to the cinema was a good idea.
- 2. There is no smoking here.
- 3. It is no good making noise in the library.
- 4. It is useless calling for help.
- 5. Everybody started to smile on his entering the room.
- 6. President's appearing in public surprised us.
- 7. She is afraid of walking in the dark.
- 8. I don't mind opening the window.
- 9. On seeing that she immediately started to cry.
- 10. He got the money by robbing a bank.

- а) Пойти в кино была хорошая идея.
- b) Не хорошо шуметь в библиотеке.
- с) Здесь не курят.
- d) Бесполезно звать на помощь.
- е) Увидев это, она немедленно начала кричать.
- f) Все начали улыбаться, когда он вошел в комнату.
- g) Если вы получите письмо, сообщите, пожалуйста, мне как можно скорее.
- h) Мой отец был занят просмотром футбола.
- і) Этот фильм стоит того, чтобы его посмотреть.
- j) Я закончил работать в 7 часов и пошел домой.

- 11. The boy left the room without saying goodbye.
- 12. In case of receiving the letter please inform me as soon as possible.
- 13. He said about his experience for the purpose of getting that job.
- 14. I finished working at 7 p.m. and went home.
- 15. The music stopped but he kept on dancing.
- 16. This film is worth seeing.
- 17. My father was busy watching football.

- k) Мальчик покинул комнату, не попрощавшись.
- l) Музыка прекратилась, но он продолжал танцевать.
- m) Появление президента на публике удивило нас.
- n) Он достал деньги, ограбив банк.
- о) Он сказал о своем опыте, чтобы получить ту работу.
- р) Она боится гулять в темноте.
- q) Я не возражаю против того, чтобы открыть окно.

TEMA 6. ИНФИНИТИВ (THE INFINITIVE)

Инфинитив, или неопределенная форма глагола, отвечает на вопрос *что делать?* или *что сделать?* Показателем инфинитива является частина **to**.

6.1. Способы образования инфинитива

Инфинитив имеет формы времени и залога. В английском языке существуют простая и сложная формы инфинитива (табл. 6.1).

Формы инфинитива

Таблица	6.1

Группа	Active	Passive	Действие
Indefinite	to write	to be written	Выражают действия, одно-
Continuous	to be writing		временные с действием гла-
			гола-сказуемого
Perfect	to have writ-	to have been	Выражают действия, пред-
	ten	written	шествующие действию гла-
Perfect	to have been		гола-сказуемого, и перево-
Continuous	writing		дятся прошедшим временем

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Analyze the different forms of the Infinitives and state their meanings.

to translate – to be translated to mention – to be mentioned to help – to be helped to read – to be read to ask – to be asked to give – to be given

to write – to be written to find – to be found to know – to have known to read – to have read to get – to have got to go – to have gone to prove – to have proved to shout – to be shouting to dance – to be dancing to listen – to be listening to swim – to be swimming to make – to be making to do – to have been done to ask – to have been asked to forget – to have been forgotten to work – to have been working to smoke – to have been smoking

to produce – to be produced to found – to be founded to say – to have said to do – to have done to bring – to have brought to show – to have shown to study – to have studied to smile – to be smiling to run – to be running to play – to be playing to write – to be writing to sleep – to be sleeping to tell – to have been told to buy – to have been bought to ask – to have been asking to talk – to have been talking to spend – to have been spending

6.2. Функции инфинитива в предложении

Инфинитив выполняет следующие функции в предложении:

1. *Подлежащее*; переводится существительным или неопределенной формой глагола:

To operate the complex device is rather difficult. — **Управлять (управление)** этим сложным механизмом довольно трудно.

Признаком инфинитива-подлежащего является его положение в начале предложения перед сказуемым и отсутствие другого слова, являющегося подлежащим.

- 2. Часть сказуемого:
- а) составного глагольного (переводится неопределенной формой глагола):

You must (had to) **improve** your methods of work. — Вы должны (должны были) **улучшить** методы работы.

This engineer is **to design** a new high-speed vessel. — Этот инженер должен **спроектировать** новое скоростное судно.

b) именной частью сказуемого после подлежащего, выраженного словами **aim, purpose** — *цель*, **duty** — *долг*, *обязанность*, **task** — *задача*, **method** — *метод*, **wish** — *желание*, **plan** — *план*, **function** — *назначение*, *функция*, **problem** — *проблема*, *задача* и др., и глагола-связки **to be**, причем глагол-связка либо совсем не переводится на русский язык, либо переводится словами *заключаться в том*, *что(бы)*, *состоять в том*, *чтобы*:

Our aim is to fulfill our work in time. — Наша цель — выполнить работу в срок. (Наша цель заключается в том, чтобы; состоит в том, чтобы ...)

3. Дополнение; переводится неопределенной формой глагола:

We hope to obtain new cargo in a week or two. — Мы надеемся получить новый груз через неделю или две.

- 4. Определение; инфинитив в функции определения всегда стоит после определяемого существительного и переводится:
- а) определительным придаточным предложением, сказуемое которого выражает долженствование, возможность или будущее время:

The crane **to be used** in our work is to be safe. – Кран, **который будет использован (нужно, можно использовать)** в нашей работе, должен быть безопасным.

b) неопределенной формой глагола:

I have no desire **to go** there. – У меня нет желания **идти** туда.

с) существительным:

The idea **to use** these new facilities didn't leave us. — Мысль **об исполь- зовании (о том, чтобы использовать ...)** этого нового оборудования не покидала нас.

5. Обстоятельство цели; стоит в начале предложения перед подлежащим или в конце предложения. Иногда вводится союзом in order to – для того чтобы. Переводится на русский язык неопределенной формой глагола с союзом чтобы, для того чтобы или существительным с предлогом для:

To handle cargo workers use deck facilities. — **Чтобы обработать груз** (для обработки ...), рабочие используют палубное оснащение.

A number of devices were used **in order to handle** cargo. — Было использовано несколько агрегатов **для обработки (чтобы обработать ...)** груза.

Итак, инфинитив переводится на русский язык:

- 1. неопределенной формой глагола;
- 2. существительным;
- 3. придаточным предложением.

Тренировочные упражнения [3, с. 78]

Ex. 2. Translate	the word-combinations	with the	Infinitive in	the	attrib-
utive function.					
the work to be done –					

the phenomena to be studied –
the letter to be signed –
the text to be translated –
the experiment to be continued –
the task to be fulfilled –
the information to be transmitted –
the equipment to be tested –
he words to be learnt –
the story to be repeated –
the instructions to be followed –
the house to be built –
the promise to be kept –
the lecture to be delivered –
the problem to be solved –
the engine to be repaired –
the monument to be restored –
the question to be discussed –
the meeting to be held –
the talks to be conducted –
the letter to inform them –
the picture to speak of –
the conference to open in Moscow –
a book to read –
some water to drink –
the first to come –
the last to leave –
the second to arrive –
the only one to get a good mark –
a knife to cut the bread with –

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences with the Infinitive in different functions.

а) в функции подлежащего:

- 1. To translate this text is not at all easy.
- 2. To know the language well means to master it perfectly.
- 3. To go in for sports will do you a lot of good.
- 4. To restore the ruined sculpture was impossible.
- 5. To repair the car engine will take not less than two days.
- 6. To ask you questions is my duty.
- 7. To worry and to fuss was useless.
- 8. To construct such a machine requires much time.
- 9. To be properly understood is the only thing I want.
- 10. To collect and to process data is our usual task.

- 11. It is not necessary to go into details.
- 12. It is a great pleasure to make your acquaintance.
- 13. It will take you ten minutes to get there.
- 14. It is usual for him to keep his opinion to himself.
- 15. It must be very nice to go to the country every week-end.

b) в функции части сказуемого:

- 1. His first action was to visit memorial places.
- 2. The main problem is to change the original plan.
- 3. What I want is to get out of here.
- 4. Our plan was to carry out a number of experiments.
- 5. To act like this meant to betray our plans.
- 6. Our next step must be to consult an experienced lawyer.
- 7. Our only chance to see him is to visit him tonight.
- 8. To ask him a straight question means to offend him.
- 9. I hope to meet you again.
- 10. We decided to check the results of the experiment.
- 11. He doesn't like to be bothered with trifles.
- 12. I want to know everything and to be informed of all events happening at the plant.
 - 13. He was happy to see you.
 - 14. They are glad to be invited to the conference.
- 15. He is lucky to have travelled all over the world and to have seen so much of it.
 - 16. Children like to be told fairy tales.
 - 17. I didn't intend to take part in this work.
 - 18. He hates to be laughed at.
 - 19. I remember to have met this man.
 - 20. We pretended not to notice his mistakes.

с) в функции дополнения:

- 1. They promised us to come in time.
- 2. The director advised me to go in for sports.
- 3. I told him to test the equipment.
- 4. She asked the children to help her.
- 5. The chairman asked the participants of the conference to keep to the subject.
 - 6. The teacher told the students to translate the text.
 - 7. I order you to do what has been told.
 - 8. I ask you to keep silence.
 - 9. We promise you to do everything properly.
 - 10. I advise you to give up smoking.

d) в функции определения:

- 1. Here are the instructions to be followed.
- 2. The monument to be built here will add beauty to the place.
- 3. These are the letters to be answered.
- 4. There was nothing to be done.
- 5. Here is the article to be read.
- 6. This question will be discussed at the meeting to be held tomorrow.
- 7. Here is the list of books to be published this year.
- 8. The pictures to be displayed at the international exhibition are taken from many world-famous museums.
 - 9. Safety is the first thing to be observed in shooting competitions.
 - 10. There are some more facts to be explained.
 - 11. I have a lot of things to think of.
 - 12. He is just the man to help us.
 - 13. I am very busy; I have many things to do.
 - 14. He was the first to congratulate me.
 - 15. I was the last to know the news.
 - 16. Don't forget about your promise to visit us.
 - 17. The first person to enter the room was my brother.
 - 18. We refused his offer to help us.
 - 19. I have no desire to change my mind.
 - 20. We had no chance to speak to him.
 - 21. Tell the child that matches are a dangerous thing to play with.
 - 22. These houses were among the few to survive after a great fire.
 - 23. I am always the last to be informed.
 - 24. Do you know the station to get off?
 - 25. This is not the subject to speak about.
 - 26. Here is the knife to cut bread with.
 - 27. He was the only one to get a good mark at the exam.
 - 28. He is not the person to rely on.
 - 29. He is not the person to discuss such things with.
 - 30. This is the box to keep instruments in.

е) в функции обстоятельства:

- 1. Everything was done to save him.
- 2. He hired a taxi to take us to the railway station.
- 3. I got up at 6 o'clock so as not to miss the morning train.
- 4. I wrote him a letter to remind him of his promise.
- 5. Did you come to take part in the conference?
- 6. To do the work properly you must follow our instructions.
- 7. To take correct measurements it is necessary to use accurately adjusted instruments.

- 8. To meet the demand for motor cars, a new automobile plant was put into operation.
 - 9. To pass exams well you must work hard.
 - 10. To finish the experiment in time we had to work without any days off.
 - 11. He returned to his Motherland never to leave it again.
 - 12. The child is too small to understand your joke.
 - 13. The question is too complicated to be solved at once.
 - 14. The boy is clever enough to make his own decision.
 - 15. I don't know him well enough to rely upon him.
 - 16. The book is too long to be read in a day.
 - 17. In order to hear the music well I left the window open.
 - 18. The students kept silent in order not to miss a teacher's word.
 - 19. I'll put down your address so as not to forget it.
- 20. To make a long story short, we stopped all arguments and started a new round of talks.

6.3. Употребление инфинитива без частицы 'to'

В современном английском языке инфинитив в основном употребляется с частицей **to**. Но есть случаи, когда частица **to** не употребляется:

1. После вспомогательных глаголов:

We don't know the captain of the ship. — Мы не знаем капитана этого $cy\partial нa$.

2. После модальных глаголов:

You can't overload the ship. — Вы не можете загружать корабль сверх нормы.

3. После глаголов чувственного восприятия **to see**, **to hear**, **to feel** и др.:

I've never **see** the ship **navigate** in the sea. — \mathcal{S} никогда не **видел**, как судно **идет** по морю.

4. после глаголов **to let** – *позволять*, **to make** в значении *заставлять*, **to need** – *нужно*:

Let him take part in discharging the ship. — Позвольте ему участвовать в разгрузке судна.

5. После выражений **had better** ... лучше бы, **would rather** / **sooner** ... бы пожалуй, **cannot but** не могу не ... и др.:

You had better discharge the ship with crane. — Вам лучше бы разгружать судно краном.

6. В предложениях, начинающихся с вопросительного слова **why** (not) *почему* бы (ne) ...:

Why not discharge the ship with crane? — Почему бы не разгружать корабль краном?

7. После слов **than**, **rather than**, **but**, **except**, означающих *вместо того чтобы*:

Rather than discharge the ship, the gang had a break. — Вместо того чтобы разгружать корабль, бригада ушла на перерыв.

Тренировочные упражнения

	Ex	. 4. Insert 'to' where necessary.
	1.	I like play the piano.
	2.	My brother can write poems.
	3.	We had put on our overcoats because it was cold.
	4.	They wanted cross the river.
	5.	It is high time for you go to bed.
	6.	May I use your telephone?
	7.	They heard the girl cry out with joy.
	8.	I would rather stay at home today.
	9.	He did not want play in the yard anymore.
		Would you like go to England?
	11.	You look tired. You had better go home.
	12.	I wanted speak to Nick, but could not find his telephone
numb	er.	
	13.	It is time get up.
	14.	Let me help you with your homework.
		I was planning do a lot of things yesterday.
	16.	I'd like speak to you.
		I think I will be able solve this problem.
		What makes you think you are right?
	19.	I will do all I can help you.
	20.	I like dance.
	21.	I'd like dance.
	22.	She made me repeat my words several times.
	23.	She did not let her mother go away.
	24.	Do you like listen to good music?
	25.	That funny scene made me laugh.

	1 I heard him		ame	
	a) mention:	b) mention	inc.	
	a) listen;	b) listening	o music.	
	-			
	a) to say;	a b) say.	iew words.	
	, ,	· · · · · ·	m	
		the b) protection		
	, .	a c	_	
	a) having;	b) to have.		
	6. He avoids			
	a) to meet;			
		thr		
	a) wait;	b) to wait.		
	,	d		ter
	a) to write;	b) writing.		
		t		
	a) iumping:	b) jump.	•	
	10. It is no use	b) jump. h	im about it.	
	a) asking;	b) to ask.		
	1. You can't stop	o me	what I	and or the Infinitive. want.
	a) dollig,	b) do; v. I promised b) not to be;	c) to do,	a) mai i do.
	2. I must go now	h) not to be:	lau	e.
	a) not being,	b) not to be,	b you or do yo	yy yyant ta ga alana?
	5. Do you want	b) ma to some:	ii you or uo yo	ou want to go alone? ne; d) that I will come.
		ed the door. I clear		
		b) to lock;		
	a) langhing.	h) to laugh:	c) lanah.	d) that she laughed.
		Berlin now. He like		
	a) living;			
	, ,	/	ke	the kitchen as often
as po	essible.			
1	a) cleaning:	b) clean;	c) to clean;	d) that I clean.
	8. I am tired. I'd	rather	out this eve	ening, if you don't mind.
	a) not going;	b) not to go;	c) don't go;	d) not go.
		nere? – I'd rather _		
				: d) vou would come.

10. Are you loo	king forward	or	n holiday?	
a) going;	king forward b) to go;	e) to going;	d) that you g	gO.
	came to Britain, she			
	b) to driving;			
12. I am thinkin	g a h	nouse. Do you t	think that's a	good idea?
a) to buy;	b) of to buy;	e) of buying.		
13. I had no	a place	to live. In fact	it was surprisi	ingly easy.
a) difficulty to f	ind; b) difficu	lty finding;	c) trouble to	find.
14. A friend of	mine phoned		me to a party	•
a) for invite;	b) to invite;	e) for inviting;	d) for to invi	ite.
15. Jim doesn't	speak very clearly.	·		
a) It is difficult	to understand him.	b) He is dif	ficult to under	rstand him.
16. The path wa	as icy, so we walke	d very carefully	y. We were af	raid
a) of falling;	b) from falling;	c) to fall; d) to falling.	
17. I didn't hear	you	in. You mu	st have been v	ery quiet.
a) come;	b) to come;	c) came.		
	a hotel, we looked			
a) Finding;	b) After finding;	c) Having find	d) We	found.
19. She noticed	b) him run;	away from	the house.	
a) him to run;	b) him run;	c) him ran.		
20. I'd advise _		_ more exercise	2 .	
a) to take;	b) you to take;	c) you taking.		

6.4. Объектный инфинитивный оборот (The Objective Infinitive Construction)

Инфинитив с относящимися к нему словами образует инфинитивный оборот. Инфинитив может входить в состав сложного дополнения (объектный инфинитивный оборот) и сложного подлежащего (субъектный инфинитивный оборот).

Объектный инфинитивный оборот или сложное дополнение состоит из следующих составляющих:

существительного (в общем падеже)	+ инфинитив смыслового гла-
или местоимения (в объектном падеже:	гола
me, him, her, us, you, them)	

We consider **the results of transportation to be** satisfactory. — Мы считаем, что **результаты перевозки** удовлетворительны.

Сложное дополнение употребляется после глаголов, выражающих:

1. желание, требование, просьбу: **to want** — *xomemь*, **to wish** — *желать*, **to like** — *нравиться*, **should (would) like** — *xomenocь бы*, **to request** — *просить*, **to require**, **to demand** — *пребовать*, **to command** — *приказывать*;

- 2. мнение, суждение, предположение: **to assume** *предполагать*, *допускать*, **to believe** *полагать*, *считать*, **to think** *думать*, *считать*, **to consider**, **to take** *считать*, **to expect** *ожидать*, *полагать*, **to find** *находить*, *признавать*, **to know** *знать*, **to suppose** *полагать*, **to show** *показывать*, **to prove** *доказывать*, *оказываться*;
- 3. чувственное восприятие: **to see** видеть, **to hear** слышать, **to feel** чувствовать. После этих глаголов инфинитив стоит без частицы **to**.

На русский язык объектный инфинитивный оборот, как правило, переводится придаточным дополнительным предложением, подлежащим которого является дополнение, а сказуемым — инфинитив английского предложения:

We wanted **him to take part** in cargo handling. — Мы хотели, **чтобы он принял участие** в обработке груза.

We know **television to be** widely **used** in everyday life and in industry. — Мы знаем, **что телевидение** широко **используется** как в повседневной жизни, так и в промышленности.

The students saw the device begin to operate. — Студенты увидели, как прибор начал работать.

После глаголов **to make**, **to cause** в значении *заставлять*, *вызывать*, **to allow**, **to permit** – *разрешать*, **to enable** – *давать возможность* инфинитив объектного оборота может стоять в активном и пассивном залоге. При переводе можно:

- 1. сохранять порядок слов английского предложения;
- 2. переводить инфинитив существительным сразу после глагола или неопределенной формой глагола в активном залоге:

The use of this crane permits more complex handling to be carried out. — Применение этого крана позволяет провести (проведение) более сложную обработку.

Примечание. После глагола **to make** в значении *заставлять* инфинитив употребляется без частицы **to**:

The stevedore can **make** the gang **use** the crane if necessary. — Стивидор может **заставить** бригаду **использовать** кран в случае необходимости.

Но в пассивном залоге частица **to** остается:

The gang was made to use the crane. — Бригаду заставили использовать кран.

После глаголов, выражающих чувственное восприятие, в сложном дополнении вместо инфинитива можно употреблять Participle I, если необходимо подчеркнуть процесс действия:

We saw the experienced worker operating a new very complex machine with great skill. — Мы видели, как опытный рабочий умело управлял новой, очень сложной машиной.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences with the Objective Infinitive Constructions.

- 1. I expect the translation to be finished tomorrow.
- 2. I want the article to be translated right now.
- 3. I consider him to be the most outstanding actor of our days.
- 4. I want you to be happy.
- 5. I hate people to argue about trifles.
- 6. I know this medicine to work wonders.
- 7. I only want it to be done as soon as possible.
- 8. We think it to be wrong.
- 9. The scientists suppose these phenomena to be of great value.
- 10. They believed it to be a coincidence.
- 11. I felt somebody touch me.
- 12. What makes you think so?
- 13. He heard someone call his name.
- 14. Your enthusiasm makes me feel young again.
- 15. Nobody saw her face change.
- 16. We thought ourselves to be lucky.
- 17. She considered the question to be useless.
- 18. Further experiments proved the assumption to be wrong.
- 19. We all know him to be very punctual.
- 20. Which direction did you notice them go?
- 21. How did you let them know of it?
- 22. I'll have to make him re-do it.
- 23. I could hardly believe it to happen.
- 24. We didn't expect him to return so soon.
- 25. Let life go on as if nothing has changed.

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs. Give several variants where possible.

I. Why don't you	her to wear high heels?
2. The way she looks at me	me blush.
3. Do you	me to show you the place on the map?
4. No one had	her to return so early.
5. I have never	her look so sweet.
6. Who	you to miss lectures?
7. She	the children to be well behaved.
8. You can't	him come if he doesn't want to.

Ex. 9. Replace the words in italics by the Object Infinitive Construction.

Model:

Members of the Government itself acknowledge that many of

their predictions were over-optimistic. — Members of the Government itself acknowledge many of their predictions to have been over-optimistic.
1. The Court declared <i>that the book was</i> obscene. –
2. Teachers have found <i>that the overhead projector</i> is invaluable as a teaching aid. –
3. The majority of critics thought that the film was highly original. –
4. Many of the audience considered <i>that the speaker had overstated</i> his case. –
5. Evidence showed <i>that the man's alibi was</i> a complete fabrication. –
6. The architect's clients had assumed <i>that the construction of such a building was</i> impracticable, whereas the architect himself <i>believed that it was</i> perfectly feasible. –
7. At a very early age, Paderewski revealed <i>that he was</i> a master of the keyboard.
8. Everyone knew <i>that he was</i> a man of integrity. –
9. Detectives investigating the robbery discovered that £20,000 worth of precious stones was missing. –
10. Although most people once thought <i>that it was</i> impossible, several climbers have now scaled the north face of the Eiger in winter. –
Ex. 10. Translate the sentences using the phrases:
let smb do smth — позволить; пусть (они); дайте (мне); make smb do smth — заставить; have smb do smth — распорядиться, чтобы
1. Мама не позволяет мне играть в футбол. –
2. Не заставляйте меня лгать. –

3. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь принес мел. –
4. Не позволяй им так кричать. –
5. Заставь его выпить лекарство. –
6. Пусть они напишут диктант еще раз
7. Я не могу заставить его бросить курить. –
8. Он посторонился, чтобы дать ей пройти. –
9. Не смешите меня. –
10. Позвольте мне помочь вам. –
11. Дайте мне подумать. –
12. Распорядитесь, чтобы дети надели плащи. –
13. Дайте мне знать, когда она придет
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
14. Я велела ему объяснить, что это значит. –
<u>-</u>
 15. Не позволяйте ему есть столько конфет. –
<u> </u>

6.5. Субъектный инфинитивный оборот (The Subjective Infinitive Construction)

Субъектный инфинитивный оборот или сложное подлежащее состоит из следующих составляющих:

существительного (в общем падеже) или местоимения (в именительном падеже: I, you, he и т.д.)	+ инфинитив, стоящий после сказу-
--	-----------------------------------

The cargo obtained is considered to be satisfactory. — Считают, что полученный груз — удовлетворительный.

Субъектный инфинитивный оборот употребляется:

1. Когда сказуемое выражено следующими глаголами в пассивном залоге: to know — знать, to consider — считать, рассматривать, to say — говорить, to state — заявлять, сообщать, to report — сообщать, to think — думать, считать, to believe, to find — полагать, считать, to suppose, to assume — предполагать, to expect — ожидать и др.:

The crane is known to use in cargo handling. — Известно, что кран используется при обработке груза.

Или:

Кран, как известно, используется при обработке груза.

2. Когда сказуемое выражено глаголами, которые употребляются в активном залоге: **to seem**, **to appear** – *казаться*, **to prove** – *оказываться*, **to happen** – *оказываться*, *случаться*:

The crane seems to be capable to lift 600 to 700 kilograms. — Оказывается, кран способен поднимать от 600 до 700 килограммов.

Глагол **to appear** в таких предложениях часто переводится *по-ви- димому*:

The crane appears to be capable to lift 600 to 700 kilograms. — Повидимому, кран способен поднимать от 600 до 700 килограммов.

3. Когда сказуемое выражено прилагательными **likely** – *вероятный*, **unlikely** – *маловероятный*, **certain** – *несомненный*, **sure** – *верный* в сочетании с глаголом **to be**:

Under these conditions the output of the plant **is likely to increase**. — При этих условиях производительность завода, **вероятно, увеличится**.

The application of this vessel is certain to give better results. — Применение этого судна, несомненно, даст лучшие результаты.

Предложение с субъектным инфинитивным оборотом переводится на русский язык:

- 1. сложноподчиненным предложением. Сказуемое английского предложения, которое стоит в пассивном залоге (**is said**, **was considered**), переводится на русский язык глаголом в 3-м лице множественного числа (говорят, полагали и т.д.), за которым следует придаточное дополнительное предложение с союзом что;
- 2. простым предложением с вводными словами как известно, как считали, вероятно, по-видимому.

Как уже говорилось, перфектные формы инфинитива выражают действие, предшествующее действию глагола-сказуемого, и переводятся на русский язык глаголом в прошедшем времени:

The new vessel is reported to have been put into mass production. — Сообщают, что это новое судно уже запущено в массовое производство.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 11. Translate the sentences with the Subjective Infinitive Constructions.

- 1. He is known to be a very talented man.
- 2. The climate here is considered to be very healthful.

- 3. He is suspected to have committed a crime.
- 4. The performance is expected to be a success.
- 5. The book is said to be popular all over the world.
- 6. The poem is believed to have been written by an unknown author.
- 7. The playwright is supposed to be working at a new comedy.
- 8. The parties are reported to come to an agreement.
- 9. The problem was considered to be settled.
- 10. The new methods were found to have many disadvantages.
- 11. They seem to know all about it.
- 12. He seems to get tired.
- 13. The discussion seemed to be coming to an end.
- 14. He appeared not to know anything.
- 15. The working conditions appeared to be more difficult than it was supposed.
 - 16. I happened to be present at the opening session.
 - 17. We happened to have many mutual friends.
 - 18. My prediction proved to be correct.
 - 19. New cars proved to be very comfortable.
 - 20. The language of the article turned out to be quite easy.
 - 21. Do you happen to know him?
 - 22. The article is likely to appear in the next issue of the journal.
 - 23. He is unlikely to change his opinion.
 - 24. The proposal is likely to cause his interest.
 - 25. They are certain to come to an understanding.
 - 26. The treatment is certain to help you.
 - 27. They are sure to do all in their power.
 - 28. The truth is sure to come out.
 - 29. Complications were unlikely to appear.
 - 30. The event is sure to be much spoken about.

Ex. 12. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.

Model 1:	It seemed that he knew the subject well. – He seemed to know the subject well.		
1. It happe	ened that they met that very day		
	2. It proved that there was the case. – 3. It seems that the play has made a deep impression on him. –		
4. It prove	ed that he was a very experienced worker. –		

	5.]	It appears that the house was built in the 18 th century. –
	6.]	It happened that there was a doctor there at that time. –
	7.]	It appears that there are different opinions on this subject. –
	8.]	It happened that he was at home at that time. –
	9.	It seems that there is a great difference between these two samples. –
	Mo	odel 2: It is reported that the delegation has left London. – The delegation is reported to have left London.
	1.	It is known that he has a large collection of pictures. –
2. It may be said that the new theatre is the most beau town. –		It may be said that the new theatre is the most beautiful building in the
		It was reported that the ship had arrived in Odessa
	4.	It can't be considered that the results of the experiment are bad
	5.	It is expected that many people will attend the meeting. –
	6.	It is believed that there is hope of reaching an agreement. –
	7.	It is said that the expedition has reached Vladivostok. –
	8.	It is considered that this mine is the best in the district. –
	9.	It can be expected that the weather will improve soon. –
	10.	It can't be expected that the Petersburg football team will win
	11.	It is said that there are many difficulties in solving this problem. –
	Ex	. 13. Translate the words in brackets.
	1.	
	2.	They are expected (пошлют) a replay today.
	3.	They are said (переехали) to a new flat.
	4.	Who is supposed (noonumem) the letter?
	5	The doctor is supposed (nnonucan) you something

	6. Tr	ne results of	the experiment (былі	u)	very good.
	7. Th	ne new instr	the experiment (были rument is expected (n	юможет)	scien-
tists s			nt problems.		
	8. Th	ne members	of the committee are	understood (np	ишли)
to an	agreem	nent.			
	9. He	e is said (npe	едложил)	them hi	s services.
	10. In	the 19 th ce	ntury the dark areas	on the Mars w	ere thought (были)
		seas.			
	11. W	e were supp	osed (проведем)	the day	on board the ship.
	12. Th	ne seamen w	ere not supposed (co	йдут)	ashore that day.
			n is said <i>(сделала)</i>		
			pected (пройдут)		
	15. Sh	ne is known	(интересовалась) _		in the subject.
	16. Tł	ney were hea	ard <i>(согласились)</i>		to do it.
	17. Tł	ne ship is ex	ard <i>(согласились)</i> pected <i>(прибудет)</i> _		ere on Tuesday.
	18. Th	ney are supp	osed (преследовали)		him.
	19. Tł	ney were bel	ieved (знали)	the	secret at that time.
			e Infinitive or the G		
			ng in that new magaz	zine worth	·
			b) reading.	•	1.
			is in a hurry, I stoppe	d to	hım.
		alk;			
	3. Ir	eally must s	top b) smoking.		
	a) to s	moke;	b) smoking.		
	4. W	ould you mi	ind	_ the front door?)
			b) closing.		
	5. Yo	ou should re	member	_ him. He'll be	at home.
	a) to p	ohone;	b) phoning.		
	6. Do	o you enjoy	b) teaching.	_?	
			ondon seem	to different	towns and epochs.
	a) to b	elong;	b) belonging.		
	8. W	hy have you	ı stopped? Go on	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•
			b) reading.		
			sked us some questio	ns and went on	us
about		mate of Eng	•		
		ell;			
			finished	the waiter	brought the bill.
	,		b) eating.		
			her went to college, a		there too.
	a) to g	(0)	b) going.		

12. My car needs	a service badly,	and Tom offered	me with it.
a) to help;	b) helping.		
13. Avoid	and and	d you'll feel better soon.	
a) to overeat;	b) overeating.		
14. I can't help_		about that awful ac	cident.
a) to think;	b) thinking.		
15. The Brains w	ant	Boston this week.	
a) to leave for;	b) leaving for.		
16. I'll always remember		you for the first t	time.
a) to meet;	b) meeting.		
17. I decided		_ my holiday in France.	
a) to spend;	b) spending.		
18. I enjoy		very much.	
a) to travel;	b) travelling.		
19. We might ma	nage	a lot of interesting p	laces there.
a) to visit;	b) visitin	ıg.	
20. I dislike		around in the car.	
a) to tour:	b) touring.		

6.6. Инфинитивный оборот *for* + существительное (местоимение) (for + to – Infinitive Construction)

Предложный инфинитивный оборот **for** + существительное (место-имение) + инфинитив с частицей **to** выполняет роль любого члена предложения – дополнения, обстоятельства, части сказуемого и т.д. и переводится придаточным предложением, вводимым союзами *что*, *чтобы*, *для того чтобы*, подлежащим которого становится существительное или местоимение, стоящее перед инфинитивом, а сказуемым – инфинитив:

Everybody waited for the new data of the experiment to be published. — Все ожидали, что новые данные эксперимента будут опубликованы.

Возможен перевод этого оборота существительным или инфинитивом:

It was important **for us to solve** this problem as soon as possible. — **Нам** было важно **решить** эту проблему как можно скорее.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences with 'for+to'-Infinitive Constructions.

- 1. It is necessary for you to go there.
- 2. This is for you to decide.
- 3. The first thing for me to do is to prepare for exams.

- 4. The weather was too cold for us to go to the country.
- 5. He explained the rule again for us to understand it better.
- 6. It is a suitable machine for them to use in their research work.
- 7. It is easy for him to do this work.
- 8. It was difficult for her to translate this article.
- 9. The text was too difficult for him to read it without a dictionary.
- 10. It is too late now for children to go for a walk.
- 11. It is quite natural for him to act like that.
- 12. The main thing for all of us to do is to work in close cooperation.
- 13. Let us wait for a definite answer to arrive.
- 14. This is the lesson for you to remember for the rest of your life.
- 15. He is just the man for you to consult.

Ex. 16. Complete the following sentences by adding 'for'-phrases to them.

Мо	<i>del:</i> It would be better (you; to stay in bed). – It would be better for you to stay in bed.
1. I	t's very important (children; to play outdoors). –
2. I	t'll be best (she; to talk to the manager). –
3. I	t might be just possible (you; to make him see the doctor)
4. I	t would be easy (I; to pretend). –
5. I	t's very bad (boys; to smoke). –
6. I	t's not (you; to carry that heavy bag)
model. Mo	del: It is useful for you to follow his advice.
1.	Вам полезно есть фрукты. –
2.	Мне легче сделать это сегодня. –
3.	Им будет проще поехать туда на метро. –
4.	Ей было бы трудно решить эту задачу. –
5.	Нам было приятно снова встретить наших друзей
	Нам будет полезно отдохнуть. –
7.	Вам вредно столько курить

8.				
9.	Не мне давать вам советы.	Не мне давать вам советы. –		
10	0. Не им обсуждать этот вопр	oc. –		
Ex. 18. Complete the following sentences by adding objective 'for'- phrases to them. 1. She is out playing. The doctor does not think it necessary				
2.	Under the circumstances I rea	lly think it best		
3.	All right, I'll go. Why are you	so anxious		
4.	After a long telephone conver	rsation with John we arranged		
5.	He stood there with a bunch	of flowers waiting		
6.	The manager was very cross a	and said that he did not mean		
	Обзорные	упражнения		
		ets in the Infinitive or the '-ing' form.		
1.	The child (to sleep)	on the sofa is sick.		
2.	They watched him (to go)	upstairs. Alfred back.		
3.	I would appreciate your (to co	all)Alfred back.		
4.	I saw a taxi (to stop)	near my gate.		
5.	He is said (to be) I object to Lora's (to drive)	a good pupil.		
	He made us (to read)			
8.	Help me (to move)	the table.		
9.	She is not capable of (to do)	any harm.		
10	D. Please excuse me (to disturb)	you.		
	x. 20. Complete the sentences s in the box:	with the Infinitive or the '-ing' form of		
	know, leave, see, do, eat, le	arn, marry, wear, read, bomb		
1.		Ann.		
2.	I kept on	to play the violin.		
3.	the ne	wspaper he read the magazine.		
4.	He appeared	his car keys in his briefcase.		

	5 me to be h	onest he was astonished to hear that.					
	6. The of civil	ians horrified everyone.					
	7. I can't bear raw	I can't bear raw cabbage.					
	8. I don't know what						
	9. We enjoyed	you at our place.					
	10 fash	ionable clothes is her dream.					
	Ex. 21. Tick the correct sentence.						
	1. a) I watched her go up the st	reet and enter the house.					
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	e street and entering the house.					
	2. a) Excuse my take your seat.						
	b) Excuse my taking your se						
	3. a) She couldn't help to laugh						
	b) She couldn't help laughin						
	4. a) Bob is said to resemble his dad.						
	b) Bob is said resemble his d						
	5. a) I hate the rain pouring all						
	b) I hate the rain pour all the						
	6. a) I won't have you speaking						
	b) I won't have you speak lil						
	7. a) He heard the clock to strik						
	 b) He heard the clock strike 12. 8. a) Loud music didn't let George fall asleep. b) Loud music didn't let George to fall asleep. 						
		9. a) The plane is reported having landed on time.					
	b) The plane is reported to ha	-					
	, 1	a) You'd better to tell your parents the truth.					
	,	b) You'd better tell your parents the truth.					
	o) Tou a setter ten your par						
	Ex. 22. Match the two parts of th	e sentences.					
1.	I was always afraid of	a) meeting you at 7 p.m.					
2.		b) to have reached its destination.					
3.		c) of being among the school lead-					
٥.	The expedition is reported	ers.					
4	She doesn't seem to want	d) loosing his friendship.					
	I was tired	e) for me to pass.					
	I don't remember	f) when she was putting her coat					
0.	Tuon tremember	on.					
7	Nick is proud						
	Nick is proud I prefer	g) having seen such a picture.h) the best friends in the world.					
	Let us be						
		i) climbing the mountain.					
IU.	He stepped aside	j) to do anything I suggest.					

Ex. 23. Correct the mistakes.					
1. Did you hear me arriving? –					
2. I hope seeing you next week. –					
3. They made me to stay at home.	-				
4. We enjoyed to see them again. –					
5. John decided not buying the new	w car. –				
, -					
6. We are not looking forward to	go back to school. –				
7. We ordered him to appearing in	the university. –				
8. The grass needs to cut. –					
9. Lucy learned swimming when s	she was seven. –				
10. Mary is accustomed to sleep la	nte. –				
Ev. M. Chassa the night variant					
Ex. 24. Choose the right variant. 1. I don't mind Zac	. It's a nice nickname				
a) colling: b) being collect:	a) hoving boon o	allad			
a) calling; b) being called; The safe showed no sign of	c) having been c	aneu.			
2. The safe showed no sign ofa) touching; b) being touched	· a) having been to	auahad			
2 Our tancher suggests	test poxt week	oucheu.			
3. Our teacher suggestsa) writing; b) being written;	test flext week.	ruitt an			
a) writing; b) being written;	c) naving been w	ritten.			
4. I really appreciate	inis opportunity. I ii do n	ny best.			
a) giving; b) being given;	c) having been g	iven.			
5. She strongly objected to our	a fire.				
a) making; b) being made;	c) having been n	nade.			
6. The child was pullished by	to bed witho	ut ainner.			
a) sending; b) being sent;					
7. He was clever enough	in this delic	ate situation.			
a) avoiding, speaking;	b) to avoid, to speak;				
c) avoiding, to speak;	d) to avoid, speaking.				
8. I wonder if there is any use		_ the results.			
a) trying, improving;	b) trying, to improve;				
c) to try, to improve;	d) to try, improving.				
9. I used a car to get to work, and r	, , ,	by bus.			
a) go; b) going.	_				
10. Do you remember	your last exam? Was it	t hard?			
a) take: b) to take:					

11. I d	on't feel lik	ke	this article	today.
	ling and to			•
	ead and trai			
	ling and tra			
			aid of	lost in the forest.
a) hav	ing been;	b) getting;	c) havi	ng got.
13. Is	there anyth	ing here worth	,	?
a) buy	ing;	b) being bou	c) havi	ng been bought.
14. He	disliked	, ,	c) my. smoking he	late.
a) I;		b) me;	c) my.	
15. W	ould you m	ind	smoking he	re?
a) not;		b) not to;	c) no	d) don't.
16. W	e stopped		some food in the	store, because we'd run
out of our su	pplies.			
a) buy	ing;	b) to buy;	c) havi	ng bought.
17. W	hat about _		c) havi to the cinema ton	norrow?
a) to g	Ο;	b) going;	c) havi	ng gone.
18		you her	e was a great surpri und; c) To f	ise to me.
a) Find	ding;	b) Having for	und; c) To f	ind.
19. Th	e friends c	ouldn't	laughing wh	nen they discovered the
problem.				
a) assi	st;	b) help;	c) aid;	d) support.
20. I c	an't	S	standing in queues.	
a) stan	ıd;	b) fall;	c) aid; standing in queues. c) sit;	d) lie.
		=	i the appropriate j	form and translate the
sentences in			1 \	41
1. IMI	r. Abbot wa	is the first (to t	preak)	the silence.
	e next pati	ent (to exami	ne)	was a nice girl in her
early teens.		Gimat main ai	mla (ta abaama)	
		ne mrst princi	pie (<i>io observe)</i> _	when
working with		d that ha was	olyyaya tha laat (ta i	u forms)
				nform)
3. 1 a 6 Th	iii tiie iast i	nan (10 usk)	a quest	ion of the kind.
0. III	tound that	the was the on	ly one (to notice)	the dis-
	iouna mai	ne was the on	ry one (to notice)_	the dis-
crepancy.	there is to	ha a wasana	y I would like to	he the one (to offer)
8. 11		o de a vacanc	y i would like to	be the one (to offer)
	the job.	wara among ti	na fave (to sumina)	ofter o
	icse nouses	were among th	ne iew (io survive)	after a
great fire.				

10. Who was the your	ngest chess	player (to w	in)	the
title of All-Union Champion	1?			
11. The Shakespeare	Memorial	Theatre play	yers were the	second British
company (to visit)	Ru	ssia.		
12. The Nuremberg	trial was	the biggest	international	trial (to hold)
ever.				

Ex. 26. Translate the sentences.

- 1. To speak would sometimes do more harm than good.
- 2. To think otherwise would be a mistake.
- 3. To account for these variations is in principle straightforward.
- 4. To be a materialist means to accept the primacy of matter.
- 5. The first sentence must always be best, just to make people read the rest.
- 6. To live long it is necessary to live slowly. (M.T. Cicero).
- 7. The form of the equation should be simple so as to be useful for the calculation.
 - 8. The postulates should be simple enough to seem almost obvious.
 - 9. Some people are two proud to admit that they don't know.
- 10. The curves to be presented in Part V were obtained on single crystal samples.
- 11. There are many considerations to be taken into account in determining space velocity.
 - 12. He was the first to realize the difficulty of the situation.
 - 13. To do two things at once is to do neither.
 - 14. Our task is to do this work properly.
 - 15. The question of the procedure is yet to be settled.
 - 16. These measurements have to be carried out repeatedly.
 - 17. All such attempts will fail.
 - 18. It is necessary that the model adequately represent the problem situation.
 - 19. A decision maker must evaluate the research and its results.
 - 20. These measurements can be used to classify textures.

Ex. 27. Translate the sentences defining the Infinitive or Participle constructions.

- 1. We are going to overcome this difficulty with various means to be tried.
- 2. It was like someone playing with only the family to listen.
- 3. Bernard Show wanted marriages to be based upon common sense and genies.
 - 4. John Ball wanted all things to be used in common.
- 5. People's knowledge is assumed to be well-organized and to facilitate the understanding of new information.
 - 6. This process was expected to be more effective.
 - 7. The language of specialist is often difficult for the layman to read.

- 8. Two years were sufficient for the work to be done.
- 9. The other conditions being equal, the acceleration will be the same.
- 10. We have already mentioned this method as affording good results.
- 11. Bohr recognized the substance as having a condensing system.
- 12. The plant is found growing in the East Indies.
- 13. This data set should intuitively be considered as consisting of two clusters.
- 14. The results were interpreted by Arnauch as pointing to the formula mentioned.
 - 15. The temperature being raised, the kinetic energy is increased.

Ex. 28. Translate the text paying attention to the Infinitive.

The design of an automatic computer is not a simple matter. To understand how to use a computer one must fully appreciate its design. Therefore, a brief introduction to the logical design is necessary for the users to understand the underlying idea. To present some background material on theoretical and philosophical aspects of information processing is to give the user more profound understanding of computers' application. From what has been said above, it is clear that a computer may be thought of both as a machine by which to handle information and a machine by which to transform one set of symbols into another. For the user it is a machine to process the information, a way to obtain an output by applying to an input a specified sequence of logical operations. The designer considers a computer to be a device for applying a sequence of logic operations to symbols representing information.

Since mathematical operations are a particular group of logic operations, the consideration of logic operations by definition includes mathematical operations. To appreciate the significance of the conventional character of logic, and to gain some understanding of computer logical design we must consider a few simple games. These games are to illustrate some significant factors.

Ex. 29. Translate the text with the modal verbs with the Perfect Infinitive.

DESIGN FOR DECISION

Throughout this book I must have been critical of people who produce beautiful thoughts with little or no data behind them. Some readers may have felt that the decision-maker is a cold-hearted, even grim, method of making decisions. These readers might admit that a machine may be all right for making the scientific decisions or even commercial decisions, but they may have felt that Statistical Decision had no place in their world, that it is meaningless insofar as personal, governmental, or international decisions are concerned.

I disagree with this point of view. I think that Statistical Decision must have played a useful role in a wider class of decisions which have a direct influence on all of us.

I certainly do not consider Statistical Decision to be a panacea. It is one method among many methods of reaching decisions. It is not necessarily the best method; there are situations in which intuitive procedures lead to more effective decisions than any existing Decision-Maker. In fact I think that most people must have already used many of the principles in making their decisions. You may have felt that such concepts as mathematical expectations were new and unfamiliar. However, I am sure that you have had to make decisions on the basis of expectations, when you have had to combine probabilities and desirabilities (though you may not have used these names).

Ex. 30. Translate the text paying attention to the Subject Infinitive Construction.

Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790) is acknowledged to be the founder of the theory of atmospheric electricity. At the time when theories to explain electricity were neither complete nor well founded the lightning was proved by him to be an electrical phenomenon. He was not the first to think of it but he was the first to prove it. His theory of electricity still appears to hold good. He is acknowledged to have invented a means of protection against the disastrous effects of lightning – the lightning rod. Franklin's theory at first seemed to be misunderstood both in his country and abroad. It is known to have been severely attacked by the leader of French scientist Abbé Nollet.

Franklin is recognized to have been a great public figure that did as much as he could for the good of his country. He is known to have been the editor of one of the newspapers enjoying a great popularity with his countrymen. He is sure to be one of the broadest as well as one of the most creative minds of his time.

Ex. 31. Translate the text paying attention to the Objective Infinitive Construction.

Men of science consider Lobachevsky to be a great mathematician. The whole world knows Lobachevsky to have strictly demonstrated and explained the principles of the theory of parallel lines. We consider him to be a great organizer of popular education, and we know him to have written much on the problems of education.

Lobachevsky was born on December 1, 1792 near Nizhny Novgorod. His father died when he was only a child, leaving the family in extreme poverty. The family moved to Kazan where Lobachevsky was admitted to the gymnasium. We know his progress to have been extremely rapid in mathematics and classics. At the age of 14 he entered the University of Kazan where he is known to have spent 40 years as a student, assistant professor, and finally rector. Under his direction great improvements were made at the University. We know an ob-

servatory to have been founded and equipped and a mechanical workshop to have been established.

For 2200 years all the mankind believed Euclid to have discovered an absolute truth. Lobachevsky proved Euclid's axiom on parallel lines not to be true. He built a new geometrical theory quite different from that of Euclid. We know his ideas to have greatly influenced not only geometry, but mechanics, physics, astronomy as well. Like Galileo, Copernicus and Newton he is one of those who laid the foundation of science.

Ex. 32. Translate the sentences into English.

1. событии.	Я попросил вас прийти, чтобы сообщить об этом радостном –
2.	Он недостаточно силен, чтобы участвовать в этой экспедиции
3. словаря	Текст был слишком трудный, чтобы он смог перевести его без
	Он хочет, чтобы его приняли в группу экспертов по вопросам энергетики. –
	Мы не хотели, чтобы нас прерывали, и попросили дать больше для доклада. –
6.	Ему не нравится, когда задают слишком много вопросов. –
7.	Я никогда не слышал, как она говорит по-французски
	Я никогда не видел, как работает это устройство, и попросил, одемонстрировали его работу еще раз. –
	Просмотрев мельком текст, я понял, что не смогу перевести его ря. –
10.	Он попросил сына открыть окно. Он попросил открыть окно
	Капитан приказал матросам вымыть палубу. Капитан приказал палубу. –
	Я видел, как ящики упаковали, положили в грузовик и увезли в направлении. –

13. Покупатели просили продавцов предоставить им скидку. Покупа-
тели попросили сделать скидку на товар
14. Я хотел, чтобы вы объяснили мне это правило еще раз. –
15. Я считаю, что Эйнштейн – лучший ученый 20 столетия. –
16. Мы не приняли предложение судовладельца, полагая, что фрахтовая цена чрезмерна завышена. –
17. Говорят, что в соседней аудитории будет проходить конференция молодых ученых. –
18. Считают, что Покрышкин – один из самых лучших летчиков советского периода. –
19. Он, по-видимому, удовлетворен результатами своего исследования. –
20. Кажется, он собирается выдвигать свою кандидатуру на пост мэра. –
21. Маловероятно, что погода завтра испортится. Посмотри, какое чистое небо! –
22. Известно, что Ломоносов был самым блестящим и выдающимся ученым своего времени. —
23. Известно, что доктор Чазов был специалистом по сердечным заболеваниям. —

TEMA 7. ПОВЕЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ (THE IMPERATIVE MOOD)

Повелительное наклонение выражает просьбу, приказание, совет, побуждение к действию. Простая форма повелительного наклонения (когда просьба или приказание обращены ко 2-му лицу единственного и множественного числа) совпадает с формой инфинитива без частицы **to**:

 \emph{Be} careful while handling cargo. — $\emph{Eydb}(\emph{me})$ осторожен (осторожны) при обработке груза.

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to do** и отрицания **not**, которые ставятся перед глаголом в форме инфинитива без частицы **to**:

Do not (Don't) carry cargo in this vessel. — **He nepeвозите** груз этим судном.

По форме и по месту в предложении глагол в повелительном наклонении может совпадать с существительным, поэтому в сомнительных случаях необходимо определить, есть ли в предложении другой глаголсказуемое:

Help them, please. — Помоги(me) им, пожалуйста.

Help came in time. – Помощь пришла вовремя.

Когда побуждение к действию относится ко всем остальным лицам, употребляется аналитическая (сложная) форма повелительного наклонения. Она образуется при помощи глагола **let** в повелительном наклонении, за которым следует существительное в общем падеже или личное место-имение в объектном падеже (me, him, her, it, us, them) и смысловой глагол в форме инфинитива без частицы **to**.

Сочетания такого типа переводятся на русский язык при помощи слов *пусть*, *давай(те)*, *позволь(те)* в зависимости от лица:

Let me help you. – Позвольте мне помочь вам.

Let us deliver the parcel. – Давайте доставим эту посылку.

Let the parcel be delivered to the manager. — Пусть посылку доставят менеджеру.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences.

- 1. Ask no questions and you will be told no lies.
- 2. Never judge by appearance.
- 3. If you want to be seen stand up, if you want to be heard speak up, if you want to be appreciated shut up.
 - 4. Don't let age become your age.
 - 5. Watch closely the rise in temperature!
 - 6. Let me turn back in order to make my point of view a little clearer.
 - 7. Don't look through the text once more!
- 8. Let the centres of the three given circles have coordinates (x_1, y_1) , (x_2, y_2) and (x_3, y_3) respectively.
 - 9. And now let us try to explain.
 - 10. To make sure that the result does agree with the expected one, check it.
 - 11. Do not be so persistent!

- 12. Be content with little!
- 13. Let is project to another subject of consideration.
- 14. Do be careful with that device!
- 15. Don't expect to succeed at your first, or even your second, attempt.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.
1. Не закрывайте окна. –
2. Позовите носильщика, пожалуйста. –
3. Прочитайте эту статью. –
4. Покажите мне вашу курсовую работу. –
5. Пусть рабочие не закрывают склад до моего прихода. –
6. Попросите их принести словари из библиотеки
7. Разрешите ей участвовать вместе со мной в конкурсе
8. Покажите ему, где нужно поставить подпись
9. Не разрешайте ей сидеть много перед компьютером. У неё пло- хое зрение. –
10. Не давай детям много мороженного
11. Не учите людей тому, чего не знаете сами. –
12. Не допускайте пробелов в знаниях. –
13. Не отправляйте товары железной дорогой. –

TEMA 8. СОСЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ (THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD)

Сослагательное наклонение, в отличие от изъявительного, выражает действие не реальное, а предполагаемое или желательное.

В русском языке сослагательное наклонение выражается сочетанием формы прошедшего времени глагола с частицей $\delta \omega$ и имеет одну форму для настоящего, прошедшего и будущего времени:

Если **бы** у меня было больше времени, я **бы составил** план погрузочных работ **(сегодня, вчера, завтра)**.

В английском языке сослагательное наклонение может выражаться синтетически, т.е. простыми глагольными формами, или аналитически, т.е. при помощи сложных глагольных форм.

К синтетическим формам относятся:

- 1. Для глагола **to be**:
- а) форма **be** для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа:
- It is necessary that the engine **be** light and highly efficient. Необходимо, чтобы двигатель **был** легким и очень эффективным.
 - b) форма were для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа:

I wish the ship were here. - Я хочу (хотел бы), чтобы корабль **был** здесь.

Форма were употребляется в придаточных предложениях, выражающих желание, сравнение или условие.

2. Для всех остальных глаголов — форма инфинитива без частицы **to** для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа: she **work**, he **study**, they **come**:

We suggested that he **inform** us about ship's departure. — Мы предложили, чтобы он **проинформировал** нас об отправлении корабля.

Синтетические формы, кроме формы were, употребляются довольно редко (за исключением языка художественной литературы); более обычным является употребление аналитических форм сослагательного наклонения.

Аналитические формы представляют собой сочетание глагола **would** с простым инфинитивом (если предполагаемое действие относится к настоящему или будущему) или с перфектным инфинитивом (если действие относится к прошлому):

I would like to do it. – Мне бы хотелось сделать это.

He would have come here but he was busy. — Он бы пришел сюда (раньше, тогда), но он был занят.

В английском языке сослагательное наклонение употребляется:

1. В простых предложениях, выражающих предположение или пожелание. В этом случае употребляется вспомогательный глагол would. В простых предложениях наряду с would употребляются глаголы might и could, которые сохраняют свое лексическое значение и переводятся на русский язык мог(-ла, -ло, -ли) бы:

It would be interesting to farewell the ship. — **Было бы** интересно проводить этот корабль.

Atomic energy **might be used** in this ice-breaker. — Атомная энергия **могла бы быть использована** в этом ледоколе.

В лозунгах и призывах употребляется чаще синтетическая (простая) форма сослагательного наклонения:

Be it so! — **Пусть будет** так!

- 2. В сложноподчиненных предложениях:
- а) В придаточных предложениях подлежащих, начинающихся с союза that после оборотов типа: it is required *mpeбyemcs*, it is necessary *необходимо*, it is important *важно*, it is possible *возможно*, it is desirable *желательно*, it is probable *вероятно*;

It is necessary that the plan drawn up should be highly accurate. = It is necessary that the plan drawn up be highly accurate. — Необходимо, чтобы составленный план был очень точным.

b) В дополнительных придаточных, начинающихся с союза **that**, после глаголов, выражающих:

приказание to order – приказывать to demand – требовать to insist – настаивать

предложение to suggest – предлагать to propose – предлагать to recommend – рекомендовать

The stevedore **suggested that** the crane **should be used** for cargo handling. — Стивидор **предложил использовать** кран для обработки груза.

с) В обстоятельственных придаточных предложениях цели после союзов so that — ∂ ля того чтобы и lest — чтобы не. В этом случае наряду с should употребляются также глаголы might и could, которые, как правило, сохраняют свое лексическое значение и переводятся на русский язык:

He must hurry **lest** he **should be late**. — Он должен торопиться, **чтобы не опоздать**.

The new design of the ship must be thoroughly tested **so that** we **might use** it in our construction. — Новый дизайн корабля надо тщательно испытать, **чтобы** мы **могли использовать** его в нашем строительстве.

d) В дополнительных придаточных предложениях после глагола **to wish**:

We wish our tests of this engine would give better results. — Нам хотелось бы, чтобы испытания этого двигателя дали лучшие результаты.

They wish this method were used in his work. — Им хотелось бы, чтобы этот метод использовался в его работе.

е) В обстоятельственных придаточных предложениях, выражающих нереальное сравнение, после союзов **as if** – как если бы и **as though** – как будто бы. В этом случае сослагательное наклонение передается формами, совпадающими с Past Indefinite и Past Perfect:

The Earth behaves **as if** it **were** a large magnet. — Земля ведет себя так, как **если бы** она **была** огромным магнитом (как огромный магнит).

He looked at this ship as though (as if) he had never seen it before. — Он смотрел на это судно, как будто никогда его раньше не видел.

f) В сложноподчиненных предложениях с придаточным условия (см. Тема 13. Придаточные предложения).

Примечание. В случаях a), b) и c) сослагательное наклонение выражается при помощи вспомогательного глагола **should** для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы **to** или при помощи синтетической формы.

Тренировочные упражнения [5, с. 21]

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences paying attention to the different forms of the Subjunctive Mood.

- 1. It would not make much difference.
- 2. I would be only too glad to see you again.
- 3. They would gladly accept the invitation.
- 4. In other circumstances we would not pay attention to it.
- 5. It would be very nice of you to see us off.
- 6. What would I do here without you?
- 7. He would be very much pleased with the results.
- 8. Would you go to the country on Sunday?
- 9. Life would be impossible without water.
- 10. It would be unreasonable to refuse him.
- 11. He wouldn't have recognized me that time.
- 12. I should have given you a definite answer yesterday, but I can't do it now.
 - 13. Nobody would have blamed them in those circumstances.
- 14. They didn't see anything. They would have noticed the slightest change.
 - 15. I could do nothing. What steps would you have taken in my place?
- 16. The situation was difficult, and I should not have mentioned it in your place.
- 17. What would you have done in my place? I should have done the same.
 - 18. She wouldn't have managed if herself, so I had to help her.
 - 19. It would have been much better to tell her the truth right then.
 - 20. Why didn't you ring me up? I should have come and helped you.

Ex. 2. Translate the text paying attention to the verb 'would' and 'will'.

THE HYGROMETER

Air saturated with water vapour, i.e. of 100 per cent relative humidity, at a temperature of 58 °F would contain 0.01 pound of water vapour per pound of dry air. The same amount of water vapour at 77 °F would correspond to a relative humidity of only 50 per cent. On the other hand, a hygroscopic material like human hair or nylon, as it is used in many hydrometers will absorb more moisture at 58 °F than at 77 °F. Consequently, the instrument using such an element would respond not to the amount of water vapour present but to the relative humidity. Instruments utilizing this absorption effect are called hygrometers. They are either of the mechanical or the electrical type. The most general form of the mechanical type uses the above mentioned human hair and nylon elements. The elements will contract when the humidity decreases and expend when it increases.

Ex. 3. Translate the text paying attention to the Subjunctive Mood in the indefinite form.

Why are frosts so important? Why does it matter more when the temperature falls below 0° Centigrade than when it falls below 20° or -20° ? The answer is because water is the commonest substance which undergoes a change of state within the temperature range where human life is possible. If we could live at such temperatures, the boiling point of water would be equally important.

Ice is lighter than water. That is to say water expands when it freezes. It even starts to expand a little before it freezes. This has a number of consequences. If ice were heavier than water it would fall to the bottom of ponds and of the sea. Shallow ponds would freeze solid. So would the Arctic Ocean. And very likely there would be ice at the bottom of even the tropical oceans. In fact the whole earth would probably be a lot colder; and perhaps the Venus, which is a good deal warmer than the earth, would be a more suitable place for living beings.

TEMA 9. ВОПРОСИТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ (INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES)

Порядок слов в вопросительных предложениях зависит от типа вопроса (табл. 9.1).

1. **Общий вопрос (The General Question)** – вопрос, относящийся ко всему предложению и требующий ответа **Yes** или **No**.

Порядок слов в общем вопросе следующий:

a)

/			
смысловой глагол	подлежащее	именная часть	остальные члены
или глагол-связка		сказуемого	предложения
Is	your friend		in Moscow?
Is	your friend	an engineer?	

b)

вспомогательный	подлежащее	смысловой	остальные члены
глагол		глагол	предложения
Does	your friend	work	at this plant?

Разновидностью общего вопроса является **альтернативный вопрос** (the Alternative Question) — вопрос с союзом **or** *или*, представляющий возможность выбора (альтернативу). Ответ на него всегда полный:

- -Do you work at a plant **or** at an institute? -I work at an institute.
- 2. **Вопрос к подлежащему или его определению (The Subject Question).** При вопросе к подлежащему или его определению сохраняется прямой порядок слов.

вопросительное слово	сказуемое	остальные члены
(на месте подлежащего)		предложения
Who	will make	a report?
Whose journal	lies	on the desk?

3. Специальный вопрос (The Special Question) — вопрос, относящийся к какому-либо члену предложения. Специальный вопрос начинается с вопросительного слова (who, what, when, where, why и др.) и требует полного ответа.

Порядок слов в специальном вопросе следующий:

a)

вопроси-	основной		именная часть	остальные
тельное	глагол или	подлежащее	составного	члены
слово	глагол-связка		сказуемого	предложения
Where	were	your parents		last week?
What	is		your father?	

b)

вопроситель-	вспомогатель-	подле-	смысло-	остальные члены
ное слово	ный глагол	жащее	вой глагол	предложения
Where	do	you	live	in summer?

4. **Разделительный вопрос** (The Tag Question) представляет собой утвердительное или отрицательное повествовательное предложение, к которому присоединен общий вопрос, состоящий из соответствующего местоимения и того вспомогательного или модального глагола, который входит в состав сказуемого повествовательного предложения.

Утвердительное начало требует вопроса с отрицанием; отрицательное – вопроса без отрицания.

Ответы на разделительные вопросы обычно краткие. Они могут выражать как согласие, так и несогласие с говорящим:

She **is** very busy, **isn't** she? — Она очень занята, **не правда ли**? Yes, she is. (No, she isn't.) — Да, очень. (Hem, не очень.)

She isn't very busy, **is** she? — Она не очень занята, **не правда ли**? No, she isn't. (Yes, she is.) — Hem, не очень. (Очень занята.)

Your friend can speak English, can't he? — Ваш приятель умеет говорить по-английски, не правда πu ?

Yes, he can. (No, he can't.) - Да, умеет. (Hem, не умеет.)

Your friend can't speak English, can he? — Ваш приятель не умеет говорить по-английски, не правда ли?

No, he can't. (Yes, he can.) - Да, не умеет. (Hem, умеет.)

Your sister went to Moscow, didn't she? — Bawa сестра поехала в Москву, не так ли?

Yes, she did. (No, she didn't.) - Да, поехала. (Нет, не поехала.)

Your sister didn't go to Moscow, did she? — Ваша сестра не поехала в Москву, не так ли?

No, she didn't. (Yes, she did.) - Да, не поехала. (Нет, поехала.)

Таблица 9.1 Порядок слов в вопросительном предложении

Пример
1. The chief engineer took part in the testing last month.
2. The chief engineer took part in the testing last month, didn't he ?
3. Who took part in the testing last month?
4. What engineer took part in the testing last month?
5. Did the chief engineer take part in the testing last month?
6. Did the chief engineer take part in the testing or in the party last month?
7. What did the chief engineer take part last month in?
8. When did the chief engineer take part in the testing?
Тип вопроса: 1 – повествовательное предложение; 2 – разделительный
вопрос; 3 – вопрос к подлежащему; 4 – вопрос к определению подлежа-
щего; 5 – общий вопрос; 6 – альтернативный вопрос; 7 – специальный
вопрос (к обстоятельству места); 8 – специальный вопрос (к обстоятель-
ству времени)

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Make questions with 'who' or 'what'. 1. Somebody hit me. – 2. I hit somebody. –

3. Somebody gave me t	he key. –				
4. Something happened. –					
5. Diane told me something. –					
6. This book belongs to somebody. –					
7. Somebody lives in that house. –					
8. I fell over something	. –				
9. Something fell on the	e floor. –				
10. This word means son	nething. –				
11. I borrowed the mone	y from somebody. –				
Ex. 2. Ask Liz the ques	tions. (Look at her	answers before you ask the			
questions.)	,	, ,			
where / from?		From London originally.			
where / live / now?		In Manchester.			
married?		Yes.			
how long / married?		12 years.			
children?	This is a young	Yes, three boys.			
how old / they?	woman Liz	4, 7 and 9.			
what / husband / do?		He's a policeman.			
he / enjoy his job?		Yes, very much.			
arrest anyone yesterday?		I don't know.			
how often / go / on holiday?		Usually once a year.			
where / next year?		We don't know yet.			
1. when / was / built / the 2. how / cheese / is / ma 3. when / invented / the 4. why / Sue / working / 5. what time / coming / 6. why / was / cancelled 7. where / your mother 8. why / you / to the par 9. how / the accident / coming /	nis house – nde – computer / was – / isn't / today – your friends / are – l / the concert – / was / born – ty / didn't / come – lid / happen –	rect order. All the sentences			
Ex. 4. Write the negativ	e questions from th	e words in brackets. In each			
situation you are surprised.					
1. A: We won't see Ann					
B: Why not? (she / not	t / $come$ / to the $party$	v?) –			

	n't meet Brian tonight.	
2	not / like / him?) —	
3. A: Don't go and		
B: Why not? (it	· /	
	orrow some money.	
B: wny? (you / 1	not / have / any?) –	
_	ing interviewed for a job. Look at the rs. Then make the questions she is asking	
1. age?	I'm 18.	
2. live locally?	Yes, I do.	
3. address?	5, Flower Close.	
4. when / leave school?	Last year.	
5. which school / go?	Benham School.	
6. work / now?	Yes, I am.	
7. who / work for?	Millers Limited.	
8. how long?	For six months.	
9. enjoy / present job?	Yes, I do.	
10. why / want / leave?	The pay isn't good.	
out alone? Complete the A: Do you know w) Dia she go ?
B: Sorry, I've got 1	, ,	
A: Never mind. I d	on't suppose you know (2)	
A: Never mind. I dB: No, I'm afraid r		
B: No, I'm afraid rA: One more thing	not. Do you happen to know (3)	· ?
B: No, I'm afraid rA: One more thingB: I'm afraid I did	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out.	
B: No, I'm afraid rA: One more thingB: I'm afraid I did	not. Do you happen to know (3)	 ?
B: No, I'm afraid rA: One more thingB: I'm afraid I didA: OK. Well, thank	not. Do you happen to know (3) i't see her go out. k you anyway. Goodbye.	· ?
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I did A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. x you anyway. Goodbye. The sentence from the question.	·
B: No, I'm afraid ranger A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I did A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To	not. Do you happen to know (3) In't see her go out. It you anyway. Goodbye. It sentence from the question. It om gone? – Do you know	?
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I did A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To 2. — Where is the	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. k you anyway. Goodbye. sentence from the question. om gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where	? ?
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I did A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To 2. — Where is the 3. — What's the ti 4. — What does th	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. x you anyway. Goodbye. x sentence from the question. you gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where me? – I wonder is word mean? – I want to know	? ? :
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I didn A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To 2. — Where is the 3. — What's the ti 4. — What does th 5. — What time di	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. you anyway. Goodbye. y sentence from the question. om gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where me? – I wonder is word mean? – I want to know d they leave? – Do you know	? ? ;
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I didn A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To 2. — Where is the 3. — What's the ti 4. — What does th 5. — What time di 6. — Is Sue going	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. x you anyway. Goodbye. sentence from the question. om gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where me? – I wonder is word mean? – I want to know d they leave? – Do you know out tonight? – I don't know	? ? ?
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I didn A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1 Where has To 2 Where is the 3 What's the ti 4 What does th 5 What time di 6 Is Sue going	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. x you anyway. Goodbye. sentence from the question. om gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where me? – I wonder is word mean? – I want to know d they leave? – Do you know out tonight? – I don't know	? ? ?
B: No, I'm afraid r A: One more thing B: I'm afraid I didn A: OK. Well, thank Ex. 7. Make a new 1. — Where has To 2. — Where is the 3. — What's the ti 4. — What does th 5. — What time di 6. — Is Sue going 7. — Where does 0 8. — Where did I I	not. Do you happen to know (3) n't see her go out. x you anyway. Goodbye. sentence from the question. om gone? – Do you know post office? – Could you tell me where me? – I wonder is word mean? – I want to know d they leave? – Do you know out tonight? – I don't know	? ? ? ?

	at do you want? – Tell me	
	y didn't Kay come to the party? – I don't know?	
	you have to pay to park here? – Do you know?	
13. – Wh	o is that woman? – I've no idea	
14. – Did	Ann receive my letter? – Do you know?	
15. – Hov	w far is it to the airport? – Can you tell me?	
	onia Schmidt is phoning to book a hotel room. Complete th	e
=	putting the words in brackets in the correct order.	
Receptionist:	Good morning. Blakeney Hotel.	
Sonia:	Hello. My name's Schmidt. I'd like to book a room please.	
Receptionist:	Certainly. (Staying / how many nights / you / be / will?)	_
Sonia:	Three. Starting next Thursday.	
Receptionist:	Yes, we have rooms available. Double or single?	
Sonia:	Double please. (Available / is / one / with a sea view?)	_
Receptionist:	Yes. By the way, (have / about / the special offer / we ar	e
	running / you / at the moment / heard?)	_
Sonia:	No.	
Receptionist:	It's four nights for the price of three. (Don't / take / it / ad	<u>ļ</u> _
	vantage / you / why / of?)	
Sonia:	(Have / for it / what / I / to / do / to qualify / do?)	_
Receptionist:	Just confirm your reservation in writing and pay a ten pe	r
	cent deposit.	
Sonia:	(Be / much / would / that / how?)	
Receptionist:	£15.	
Sonia:	Yes. I think I'll do that. (To / make / the cheque / who / I	/
	should / payable?)	_
Receptionist:	The Blakeney Hotel.	
Sonia:	OK. I'll post it today.	
Receptionist:		
Sonia:	Thank you. Goodbye.	
Receptionist:	Thank you.	
	mplete the sentences with the auxiliary verbs 'do', 'was', 'could	,
'should', etc. So	ometimes the verb must be negative 'don't', 'wasn't', etc.	
I. I wası	n't tired but my friends	
2. I like	hot weather but Ann Colin here? – He five minutes ago but I think he	
3 Is C	Colin here? – He five minutes ago but I think he	S
zone home now		

5. – Are	night phone later this evening be you and Chris coming to the part know whether to apply for	oarty? – I	but Chris
8. – You 9. – Car	ase don't tell anybody what I sa u never listen to me. – Yes, I _ n you play a musical instrument ase help me. – I'm sorry. I	t? – No, but I	wish I!
Ex. 10. Y	ou never agree with Sue. Ans	wer in the way	y shown.
Model:	– I'm clever. – Are you? I'i	m not.	
2 3 4 5	- I'm hungry	erica. –	
	You are talking to Tina. Ask to 'Neither' if suitable. Study th		•
Model:	I'm happy. – So am I.I feel unhappy. – Do you'	? I don't.	
2 3 4 5 6	 I'm working hard. I watched television last weel I won't be in London next weel 	eek. –	
1. You do A: Is it B: (to i) 2. You no A: Do B: (to i) 3. You th	eed more money quickly. you think you'll get a pay rise shope) ink Diane will probably get the onder if Diane will get the job.	soon?	

	ot sure whether Jill is married – probably not.
A: Is Jill	
B: (to thi	the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	you got a room for tonight?
B: (to afr	·
	a party. You have to leave early.
•	a have to leave already?
B: (to afr	· ————————————————————————————————————
	mally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is
Wednesday.	
	working tomorrow?
B: (to sup	
8. You are g	going to a party. You can't stand John.
A: Do yo	u think John will be at the party?
B: (to ho	oe)
9. You're n	ot sure what time the concert is – probably 7.30.
A: Is the	concert at 7.30?
Ex. 13. Br helps him to plan	an has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by writ
Ex. 13. Br helps him to plan ing the instructor	an has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor
Ex. 13. Br helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin.	an has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by writ
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you?
Ex. 13. Brown helps him to plant ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Brown helps him to plant ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two.
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And? About seventy-five kilos.
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor:	fan has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian:	Can has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write is questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Instructor:	Can has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write is questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to plan ing the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Brian: Instructor: Brian:	Can has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write is questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Brian: Instructor: Instructor:	Can has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write is questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian:	Can has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write is questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian:	An has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian: Instructor:	An has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write 's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And
Ex. 13. Br. helps him to planting the instructor you begin. Instructor: Brian:	An has decided to join a Health Club, first, the instructor his fitness programme. Complete their conversation by write's questions. You should read the whole conversation before OK, Brian. Let's find out how fit you are. First of all, how old are you? I'm thirty-two. And

crashed my bus. Instructor: Well, perhaps we can give you some help. It's really important, you know. Come with me and I'll do a few checks and then we'll make a plan for you. OK. Thanks. Brian: Ex. 14. Put a tag question on the end of these sentences. Model: - Tom won't be late, will he? - No, he's never late. 1. - You're tired, _____? - Yes, a little. 2. – You've got a camera, _____? – Yes, why? Do you want to lend it? 3. - You weren't listening, _____? - Yes, I was!
4. - Sue doesn't know Ann, _____? - No, they've never met.
5. - Jack's on holiday, _____? - Yes, he's in Portugal. 6. - Ann's applied for the job, ______? - Yes, but she won't get it.
7. - You can speak German, _____? - Yes, but not very fluently. 8. – He won't mind if I use his phone, _____? – No, of course he won't. 9. - There are a lot of people here, _____? - Yes, more than I expected. 10. – Let's go out tonight, _____? – Yes, let's. 11. – This isn't very interesting, _____? – No, not very.
12. – I'm too impatient, _____? – Yes, you are sometimes. 13. – You wouldn't tell anyone, _____? – No, of course not. 14. – Listen, _____? – OK, I'm listening. 15. – I shouldn't have lost my temper, _____? – No, but never mind. 16. – Don't drop that vase, ____? – No, don't worry. 17. – He'd never met her before, _____? – No, that was the first time. Ex. 15. Read the situation and ask a sentence with a tag question. In each situation you are asking your friend to agree with you. Model: You and a friend are walking over a wooden bridge. It is very old and some parts are broken. What do you say? (not / very safe) – This bridge isn't very safe, is it? 1. – You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. What do you say to your friend? – (Beautiful day) 2. - You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high. What do you say? – (Expensive) 3. – You've just come out of the cinema with a friend. You really enjoyed the film. What do you say to your friend? – (Great)

I tried once, about a year ago, but I got so impatient I nearly

Brian:

ke od) do
od)
do
-
ng
sk
er.
?
_
sk
?
. •
?
- ·
?
•
?
he
110
?
•
?
-•
9
.•
?
t .

Обзорные упражнения

Ex. 18. Translate the text paying attention to the interrogative questions.

The important capabilities concerning the communication mechanism are:

- 1. Error control. Does the communication mechanism detect errors, correct errors, notify the user of errors, or does it pass data with undetected bit errors?
- 2. Addressing. How is the destination of the message addressed? Is addressing only to a single address, a group address or is a complete broadcast possible?
- 3. Data flow and control. Can data be sent simultaneously in both directions? Is a metering of flow-rate technique available?
- 4. Priority. Are there any options for priority service, multiple levels of priority, and/or pre-emption?
- 5. Security. Does the communication service offer any security mechanisms?
- 6. Delivery guarantees. Does the mechanism guarantee delivery or inability to deliver a message?
- 7. Topology. Are there any restrictions based on location or topology? Who is addressable from a particular user?
- 8. Performance and reliability. Does the communication mechanism meet specific delay and through-put characteristics? How reliable is it in the face of hardware and physical link failures?

TEMA 10. УСЛОВНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)

Обстоятельственные придаточные предложения условия вводятся союзами **if** - *если* (бы), **in case** - *в случае*, **provided**, **providing** - *при условии*, **unless** - *если не*, **but for** - *если* бы *не*.

Условные предложения подразделяются на три типа:

1. Предложения первого типа выражают реальное (выполнимое) условие, могут относиться к любому времени и переводятся изъявительным наклонением:

Our engineer always took part in the discussions **unless he was busy**. – Наш инженер всегда принимал участие в обсуждениях, **если не был занят**.

2. Предложения второго типа употребляются для выражения нереального (невероятного) или маловероятного предположения, относящегося к настоящему или будущему времени. Переводятся сослагательным наклонением.

Главное предложение	Придаточное предложение
would Indefinite	Форма глагола, совпадающая
might (could) + Infinitive без to	c Past Indefinite
We would test the device	if we got it.
Мы бы проверили этот прибор,	если бы получили его.
(сейчас или вскоре)	(но это маловероятно)
He could complete the test	if he had time (today, tomorrow).
Он бы мог закончить проверку,	если бы у него было время.

3. Предложения третьего типа:

Главное предложение	Придаточное предложение
would (should) Perfect	Форма глагола, совпадаю-
might (could) + Indefinite	щая с Past Perfect
He would have used the device	if it had been in order.
Он бы использовал этот прибор,	если бы он был в порядке.
(в прошлом)	(но он не был в порядке)
I might have come to the conference	provided I had been in town.
(last week)	
Я, возможно, пришел бы на конференцию,	если бы был в городе.
(на прошлой неделе)	(но меня не было)

Предложения третьего типа употребляются для выражения нереального (невыполнимого) предположения, так как относятся к прошедшему времени. Переводятся сослагательным наклонением.

В условных предложениях второго и третьего типа могут употребляться глаголы **might** и **could**. Эти глаголы, в отличие от вспомогательных глаголов **should** и **would**, сохраняют свое значение (**might** – вероятность, **could** – физическая возможность или умение) и переводятся как возможно, вероятно, мог бы.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Look at the warning signs. What would you say to somebody who's ignoring them?

Model:	 Danger! Keep away from the edge! – (To fall down) If you don't keep away from the edge, you'll fall down.
1. – Danger	r! Thin ice! – (To step on the ice / to be drowned)
2. – Dange	rous road! – (To drive fast / to have an accident)

3. – Beware of the dog! – (To ignore the sign / to get bitten with the dog)
4. – Danger! No smoking! – (To smoke here / to be a fire)
5. – Wet paint! – (To ignore the sign / to get dirty)
6. – Horn forbidden! – (Not obey the sign / to get fined)
Ex. 2. Use 'might' instead of 'would' to give the meaning of 'perhaps'.
1. She's getting fat. If she (not to eat) much sweet, she
(to lose) weight.
2. I didn't watch the film yesterday. If I (to have) some free
time vesterday, I (to watch) it.
3. She feels very tired in the morning. If she (to go) to
bed earlier, she (not to feel) so tired.
4. He's not a strong man. If he (to go) to the fitting cen-
ter, he (to be)stronger.
Ex 3 Use 'equild' instead of 'would' to give the magning of 'nossible'
Ex. 3. Use 'could' instead of 'would' to give the meaning of 'possible'.
1. We (to understand) the English teacher better if she
(to speak) more slowly.
2. I like reading but we don't have books in our country house. If I (to
have) books there, I (to read) a lot in summer. 3. I don't know where he's living now. If I (to know) his
3. I don't know where he's living now. If I (to know) his
address, I (to write) to him.
4. Roberta is very pretty but rather short. If she (to be)
taller, she (to be) a model.
Ex. 4. Answer the questions. Give full answers.
1. To which town / city would you go if you didn't need a visa? –
2. Who would you ask to dance if you had the choice? –
3. Could you come to the Institute on Sunday if the teacher asked you? –
4. How would you feel if you won a thousand dollars? –
5. Could you wake up at 5 a.m. if none woke you up? –
6. Could you cook your own dinner if your mother asked you? –

7.	If you had been born in 1950, what would you be now? –
8.	If you had been late for this lesson, would you have apologized to the
teacher? -	-
9.	What would you have done if you had been the Rector of the Univer-
sity?	
10.	Could you have answered these questions correctly if you had been
absent at	the lesson? –

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences paying attention to the Conditional sentences.

- 1. If you come in time, we will do everything properly.
- 2. If you stay in town, you will never be able to recover.
- 3. If it rains, we'll stay at home.
- 4. If the experiment is a success, it will confirm our theory.
- 5. If you happen to be there, you will never forget the place.
- 6. If something unexpected happens, we will always help you.
- 7. Unless you do this work, I'll have to do it myself.
- 8. Unless he comes, we will start the work without him.
- 9. Unless you ring him up, he will get offended.
- 10. If the delegation arrives tomorrow, the talks will start at once.
- 11. If he came now, we would discuss all the problems.
- 12. If you were more attentive, you would notice the mistake.
- 13. What would you say if I asked you for advice?
- 14. If I were you, I would do the same.
- 15. If we knew about it, we would help you.
- 16. If you started the work tomorrow, you would be able to finish it in time.
- 17. Provided the train left in time, it would reach the destination tomorrow morning.
- 18. Provided we had all the information, we would take the necessary steps.
- 19. Unless he were so absent-minded, he wouldn't make so many mistakes.
 - 20. Unless I knew him so well, I would never believe it.
 - 21. If you had come earlier, you would have found him here.
- 22. If you had been here only 10 years ago, you would have seen nothing but dense forest.
 - 23. If she had got the ticket yesterday, she would have already left.
- 24. If you had paid attention to my explanation, you would not have made so many mistakes.

- 25. He would have acted differently, unless he had been in such a hurry.
- 26. If we had obtained the necessary data, we should have finished the work much earlier.
 - 27. If he had consulted a doctor, he would not have fallen ill.
- 28. Provided he had been given some time, he could have solved the problem himself.
 - 29. Unless the train had been delayed, we might have missed it.
- 30. If you had known everything, you would not have made me wait so long.
 - 31. Had he heard the news, he would have written to us at once.
 - 32. Were it not a real fact, we would not pay attention to it.
 - 33. Should they find out new data, they would let us know.
 - 34. Should any need arise, we could help them.
 - 35. Had I known everything, I should have taken the necessary measures.
 - 36. Were I in your place, I would treat him as a friend.
- 37. Had you solved the problem earlier, you would not have wasted so much time.
 - 38. Were he more attentive, he wouldn't make so many mistakes.

Ex. 6. Choose the correct verb form.

- 1. If I see / will see Mike I will tell / tell him everything.
- 2. If she *changed* / *would change* her job she *earned* / *would earn* more.
- 3. If Jane *had studied / studied* more she *passed / would have passed* her exams.
- 4. If Mike *receives / has received* the telegram I'm sure he *phones / will phone* you tomorrow.
 - 5. If you worked / had worked more, you were / would be a student now.
 - 6. If I lived / would live in Spain I did / would do a lot of sunbathing.
- 7. If I *met / had met* you earlier I *didn't marry / wouldn't have married* Betty.
 - 8. If you *phone / will phone* me I *pick / will pick* you *up*.
 - 9. If I stay / will stay late I always get / will get a taxi home.
 - 10. If she *loved / had loved* him she *stayed / would have stayed* with Bob.

Ex. 7. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense. 1. If you (to go) ______ to bed earlier you (not to feel) _____ so tired. 2. If I (to get) _____ a promotion I (not to look for) _____ another job. 3. We (to have) _____ plenty of time if it (to be) _____ only 5 o'clock. 4. If I (to be) _____ very poor I (to be) _____ upset. 5. If it (to rain) _____ I (to go) _____ to see the races.

	6.	If I (to be invited)	to the yesterd	ay's party I (to
<i>go)</i> _		there.		
	7.	there. If I (to know) her we let the theatre (not to be)	ll I <i>(to phone)</i>	her at home.
	8.	If the theatre (not to be) I (to buy) a Jaguar If you (to come) to	_ so far we (to walk) _	there.
	9.	I (to buy) a Jaguar	if I (to be)	rich.
	10.	If you (to come) to	my place I (to show)	
you n	ny s	hots.		
	Ex	. 8. Change the sentences using	'I wish'.	
	1.	She couldn't be there.		
	2.	I did not wash up yesterday.		
		He doesn't have enough time to	study.	
		They did not come to the party.	•	
	5.	You did not go to Disneyland wh	nen you were in Paris.	
		You spent much money shopping	-	
		Lucy cannot speak Spanish.	<i>y</i>	
		Bert couldn't visit Bess on Tueso	day.	
		You missed the bus.	J	
		Jane doesn't like Peter.		
	Ex	. 9. Make up sentences.		
	1.	She / it / so / have / had / fallen /	slippery / been / woul	dn't / if / not
		1 1/7/ / 1 / 11/7	/1 /10/1	/1 /1
		had / I / you / chosen / would / I	/ have / If / been / gre	en / been / the /
one		1.//0/	/1 /1 / 0 /	
		lot / if / would / trained / the / the	ey /have / had / Our /	won / a / team /
game	_			
	4.	would / to / ill / place / have / yo	our / if / been / had / H	e / come / not /
he. –				
		day / would / gone / country / ha	d / if / not / a / have / i	t / I / the / been
/ nast				
		it / were / wish / now / summer /		
		I / had / I / been / wish / so / not /		
	8.	Wish / I / had / to / time / homew	work / finish / I / my /	enough. –
	9.	Not / wish / today / did / have /]	I / school / to / I / to /	go. –
	10.	. I / my / washed / yesterday / ha	ad / I / trousers. —	

Ex. 10. Match the two parts of the	e sentences.
1. He wouldn't have become so	a) I wouldn't be worried now.
strong	
2. They would have come	b) I wouldn't have gone to the library.
3. If they had been ready the day be-	<u> </u>
fore	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
4. If I hadn't needed the book	d) unless he had done sports.
5. If they had had a city map	e) they wouldn't have been lost.
6. If you had warned us	f) if Jane had invited them.
7. He wouldn't know much	g) unless you had agreed with us.
8. We wouldn't have wasted so much	
time	ii) diffess he read filden.
9. If you had sent me a telegram	i) they would have taken their ex
10 177 1 1 1 1 1	am.
10. We had never done this	j) if you had bought everything be forehand.
Ex. 11. Choose the correct answe	
1. If you drop the vase my wife _	
a) murders; b) will murder;	
2. If she not so	slowly she would enjoy the party. c) will be.
3. If we had a chicken we	
a) cooked; b) would cook;	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	rary book I will have to buy a new one.
a) will lose; b) lost;	c) lose.
5. If she you were	in hospital she would have visited you.
a) had known; b) knew;	c) would have known.
6. I wish I rich. a) would be; b) had been;	
7. I wish I his	s opinion before.
a) would know; b) had known;	
8. She wishes her parents	of her decision now. c) had been approved.
a) would approve; b) approved;	c) had been approved.
9. I wish I to	the Tower when I was in London.
a) had gone; b) went;	c) would go.
10. I wish I	_ much yesterday.
a) did not eat; b) were not eat	ing; c) had not eaten.
	-

Ex. 12. Correct the errors, if necessary.1. If I knew her well I will visit her.

- 2. If I were you I would have visited Jane yesterday.

- 3. If I have a computer I would learn Computer Studies.
- 4. If the weather would be nice tomorrow we'll go on excursion.
- 5. You did not miss the plane if you had taken a taxi.
- 6. I wish you have a car.
- 7. I wish things were different in the past.
- 8. I wish the weather were warmer.
- 9. I wish I did not decide to work in New York.
- 10. I wish I did not go to bed early yesterday.

Ex. 13. Translate the sentences.

- 1. But for his help, it would have taken us much longer to do the job.
- 2. But for the late hour, I would stay here longer.
- 3. But for the darkness, they would not have lost their way.
- 4. But for the fog, we would continue our way.
- 5. If it were not for your assistance, we could not go on with our experiment.
- 6. If it were not for constant noise from outside, the house would be very comfortable to live in.
- 7. Were it not for modern technology, there could not be modern science.
- 8. If it had not been for the bad weather, we should have spent the whole day in the country.
- 9. If it had not been for the road accident, they would have come two days earlier.
 - 10. But for your advice, we could not have managed the situation.

Ex. 14. Translate the words in brackets. 1. But for her spelling she (получила бы) ______ an excellent mark for her composition. 2. But for my sister's help I (не смогла бы перевести) _____ the article so fast. 3. But for the neighbour's chickens I (не держала бы) _____ the dog chained. 4. But for your explanation I (не смогла бы научиться) ____ to do it so well. 5. But for the final scene the picture (была бы) _____ quite good. 6. But for his sore throat he (выступил бы) _____ at the meeting. 7. But for the grandmother's operation they (поехали бы) _____ to the Crimea. 8. But for her voice she (была бы) _____ a good actress. 9. But for the heat I (нравилось бы) _____ working in this country. 10. But for the accident he (поставил бы) _____ a record.

Обзорные упражнения

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences.

- 1. If there were no clouds, we should not enjoy the sun.
- 2. If we could achieve our aims by merely wishing, life would be very easy.
 - 3. The work would be done if they prepared for it properly.
- 4. If the tools were used with greater force the depth of the cut would be affected.
 - 5. If I were you I should recheck the results.
 - 6. If we raise the temperature the film will expand.
- 7. Should we weigh the cord we should find its weight so small as to be negligible.
- 8. If the operation has been performed properly, the material will give a negative test for unsaturation.
- 9. If the masses of equal volumes are not the same, the density is not uniform.
- 10. It would have been risky to answer these questions by a simple 'yes' or 'no' if they had not been verified by experiment.
- 11. Were the speed of the rocket equal to that of light, its mass would be infinite.
 - 12. The method mattered little if the object was achieved.
- 13. If the soil is dry, practically very little, if any, water absorption takes place.
- 14. This could have been noticed by the programmer if we would have inspected his program carefully.
- 15. If I could always read I should never feel the want of the society. (G. Byron)

Ex. 16. Translate into English.

	to 11 misture into English.
1. I	Если бы вы знали грамматику лучше, вы бы не сделали столько
ошибок в	упражнениях. –
2. 3	I подожду его, если его не будет дома, когда я приду. –
3. I	Если бы сейчас не было так поздно, я бы позвонил ему. –
4. 3	Н был бы вам очень благодарен, если бы вы смогли уделить мне
несколько	минут. —
5 N	

5. Мне потребовалось много времени, чтобы перевести эту статью. Если бы вы дали мне технический словарь, я потратил бы гораздо меньше

времени на перевод. –
6. Если у вас возникнет потребность в моей помощи, я с удовольствием вам ее окажу. –
7. Мы не поедем в этом году в отпуск на море, даже если будут хорошие туры. –
8. Не пытайтесь идти с ним на контакт, даже в случае острой необходимости. Он ненадежный человек. —
9. Если бы не его помощь, мы бы не смогли выполнить поставленную задачу в срок. —
10. Когда прибудет новое оборудование для цеха, вызывайте главного инженера и приступайте к монтажу. –
11. При условии своевременной оплаты, товар можно будет забрать со склада. –
12. Если не изменят расписание, то лекция состоится в понедельник. –
13. Если бы не изменили расписание, то лекция состоялась бы в понедельник. –
14. Если бы он смог найти необходимые данные, то эксперимент можно было начать сразу же. –
15. В случае если его статья будет опубликована в научном журнале, он сможет ссылаться в дальнейшем на нее. –
16. Если бы только он проконсультировался с врачом вовремя, его болезнь можно бы было легко вылечить. –

ТЕМА 11. СЛОВООБРАЗОВАНИЕ

11.1. Словообразовательные суффиксы глаголов

О словообразовательных суффиксах имен существительных, имен прилагательных и наречий уже говорилось ранее [8].

Для образования глагола существуют следующие суффиксы: -en, -ify, -ize (-ise), -ate.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex.1. Translate the pairs of words. Pay attention to the suffixes.

-en	-ify
wide – to widen –	simple – to simplify –
short – to shorten –	solid – to solidify –
deep – to deepen –	intense – to intensify –
broad – to broaden –	electric – to electrify –
dark – to darken –	quality – to qualify –
thick – to thicken –	glory – to glorify –
light – to lighten –	identic – to identify –
black – to blacken –	pure – to purify –
weak – to weaken –	-ize (-ise)
long – length – to lengthen –	character – to characterize –
strong – strength – to strengthen –	computer – to computerize –
high – height – to heighten –	magnet – to magnetize –
hard – to harden –	organ – to organize –
bright – to brighten –	crystal – to crystallize –
threat – to threaten –	special – to specialize –
-ate	merchant – to merchandise –
active – to activate –	merchant – to merchandise
concentric – to concentrate –	oxide – to oxidize –
concentrate to concentrate	theory – to theorize –
vapour – to evaporate –	paralysis – to paralyse –
facility – to facilitate –	paralysis to paralyse
scale – to escalate –	analyses – to analyse –
	'-ate' from the given nouns and trans-
late them.	
illustration –	indication –
regulation –	activation –
ventilation –	concentration –
demonstration –	approximation –
acceleration –	cultivation –
lubrication –	education –
coronation –	separation –
contemplation –	accommodation –

Ex. 3. Underline the verbs.

Lighten, engage, constantly, healthy, higher, intensive, greatly, workable, widen, healthier, formerly, smokeless, utilize, constant, greater, lengthen, wonderfully, powerful, efficient, hygienic, harmful, completely, mechanize, safer, effective, increasingly centrifugal, vaporize, instantly, singularly.

Ex. 4. Name the verbs formed from the nouns with the same root and translate them.

establishment –	production –
equipment –	combination –
government –	introduction –
development –	lubrication –
employment –	occupation –
movement –	connection –
action –	examination –
direction –	training –
foundation –	drawing –
compression –	designing –
education –	meeting –
preparation –	beginning –
attachment –	feeling –
buyer –	ascending –
operator –	descending –
conveyer –	engagement –
pointer –	screen –
tacility	shield –
introduction –	harm –
mechanization –	land –
vaporization –	use –
intention –	advice –
removal –	hand –
descent –	point –
ascent -	device –
Ex. 5. Form verbs from the given	words with the help of suffixes:
-en	-ify
wide –	intense –
dark –	ample –
bright –	sign –
short –	class –
broad -	simple –

weak –	pure –
strength –	type –
length –	person –
height –	
threat –	-ize
	mechan(ic)
-ate	vapour –
corona –	real –
active –	central –
facility –	drama –
integr(al) -	author –
sophistic –	memory –
•	stable –

11.2. Словообразовательные префиксы

В приведенной табл. 11.1 представлены различные префиксы, которые участвуют в образовании новых слов.

Таблица 11.1 Основные префиксы (приставки)

	Префиксы с отрицательным значением			
Пре-	Перевод на	Перевод с положи-	Перевод с отрицательным	
фикс	русский	тельным значением	значением	
	язык			
1	2	3	4	
un-	не-, без(с)-	important – важный	un important – неважный	
	раз(с)-	limited – ограниченный	unlimited – безграничный	
im-	не-	ассигасу – точность	inaccuracy – неточность	
in-	без(с)-	possible – возможный	impossible – невозможный	
il-		legal – легальный	illegal – нелегальный	
ir-		responsible – ответ-	irresponsible – безответ-	
		ственный	ственный	
non-	не-	conductor – проводник	non-conductor – непровод-	
	без-		ник (изолятор)	
dis-	раз(с)-	to close – закрыть	to disclose – раскрыть	
	без(с)-	to connect – соединить	to disconnect – разъединить	
	не-		_	
mis-	неверно	to understand – пони-	to misunderstand – неверно	
		мать	ПОНЯТЬ	

Продолжение табл. 11.1

Префиксы с разными значениями				
1	2	3	4	
re-	снова	write – писать	rewrite – переписать	
	еще раз	use – использовать	re use – снова использовать	
super-	сверх-	conductive – проводи-	super conductive – сверх-	
	над-	мый	проводимый	
sub-	ниже-	way – путь, дорога	subway – подземная дорога	
	под-	system – система	subsystem – подсистема	
	и др.			
over-	сверх-	to load – нагрузить	to over load – перегрузить	
	пере- над-			
semi-	полу-	conductor – проводник	semiconductor – полупро-	
			водник	
inter-	между-	action – действие	interaction — взаимодей-	
	среди-	national – националь-	ствие	
	взаимо-	ный	international – междуна-	
			родный	
en-	(для обра-	large – большой	to enl arge – увеличить	
	зования			
	глагола)			
pre-	$ \partial o$ - to heat — нагреть to pre heat — предварите.		to pre heat – предварительно	
	заранее		нагреть	
post-	после-	war – война	post-war – послевоенный	

Тренировочные упражнения

	Ex. 6. Choose the	right variant.		
	1. The level of _	was very hi	gh at that time.	
	a) unemployment	•	b) inemployment;	
	c) overemployme	nt;	d) reemployment.	
		to phone Cat	hy several times.	
		b) unsuccessfully;	-	d) unsuccess.
	3. A very impor	tant part of the Am	erican syst	em is the commu-
nity c	ollege.	-	<u> </u>	
	a) educative;	b) educate;	c) educator;	d) educational.
	4. John left his	job because he was	s to deal	with such a large
amou	nt of work.			
	a) ability;	b) uponable;	c) unable;	d) able.
	5. Traditional ho	mes have been	by big blocks	of apartments.
	a) replaced;	b) place;	c) displaceable;	d) placement.

	6. The last year h	nas shown a slight _	in the eco	onomy.
	a) improve;	b) improved;	c) improvable;	d) improvement.
	7. If you don't sp	eak the language y	ou feel more like a	·
	a) foreigner;	b) foreignhood;	c) foreigndom;	d) foreignship.
	8. Kate is very _	·	c) friend;	
	a) friendly;	b) friendship;	c) friend;	d) friendless.
			n of our country's ϵ	
	a) politics;	b) politician;	c) policy;	d) political.
	10. She always wo	orks and do	oes her best.	
	a) hardened;	b) harder;	c) hard;	d) hardly.
	11. Who gave you	those flo	wers?	
			c) beauty;	
			ring it's still summe	
			c) imusually;	d) usualness.
		t this time.		
			c) different;	
			own language are c	
	· ·	· ·	c) monolingual;	•
		should have more	control over newsp	papers, TV and the
Intern				•
	a) governance;	b) ungovernable;	c) government;	d) governess.
		interesting jo		10
			c) extremely;	
			Il the attempts had	
			c) effecting;	d) effect.
	18. Don't stand no	ear the water! It's _	·	
	a) dangerously;	b) dangerousless;	c) dangerous;	d) danger.
		3		10.1
	a) luxuriant;	b) luxuriously;	c) luxurious;	d) luxuriate.
	20. This book is o	of no help – it is		1) 0.1
			c) usefulness;	
	21. Tina picked uj	p a of sno	w, and threw it in n	ny face.
	a) handful;	b) handship;	c) handhood;	d) hander.
	22. There are over	r one million	in this city.	10.1.1.1.
	a) inhabits;	b) inhabitants;	c) habitants;	d) 1mhabitants.
	23. This country h	nas a highly	c) developed;	culture.
	a) development;	b) develop;	c) developed;	d) developing.
			fore the product lau	
			c) Marketization;	
			difficult to	
	a) existent;	b) inexistence;	c) existence;	d) coexist.

	26. I'm always	by my atten	npt of speaking Gre	ek.
	a) disappointed;	t;	b) disappoint;	
	c) disappointment	t;	d) disappointedly.	
	27. Theatre is one	e of the oldest forms	s of	
	a) entertainment;	b) entertain;	c) entertainable;	d) entertainer.
	28. The o	f Stonehenge begar	about 5,000 years	ago.
	a) rebuild;	b) built;	c) builder;	d) building.
	29. There's been	an extraordinary	in computer of	design over the last
20 ye	ars.			
	a) improvable;	b) improver;	c) improves;	d) improvement.
	30. There is one e	evident betw	veen Kate and Ann	
	a) similar;	b) similarity;	c) simile;	d) similarly.
	31. The o	f this product line i	s Mr. Johnson.	
	a) distribution;	b) distributor;	c) distribute;	d) distributing.
	32. A shorter, mo	re meeting le	eaves time for work	ζ.
	a) productivity;		b) productive;	
	c) productiveness		d) production.	
	33. Cable TV and	d work desk with _	telephone	lines are available
in eac	ch room.			
	c) modernism;		d) modernist.	
	34. For complete	select one of	of the best diving su	uits.
	a) relaxation;	b) relax;	c) relaxative;	d) relaxant.

11.3. Интернациональная лексика

По соотнесенности значений интернациональные слова можно разделить на три основные группы:

- 1. Слова, полностью совпадающие по значению, например: **egoism, party, physics, gas, metal, mineral** и многие другие. Значение этих слов можно легко понять без словаря, зная, какой частью речи они являются.
- 2. Слова, имеющие в английском языке более широкое значение и сферу применения, чем в русском (многозначные слова). В русском языке такие слова употребляются, как правило, лишь в одном значении, например:

address (n.) - 1) aдрес 1 ; 2) обращение, речь; (v.) – обратиться; finish (n.) - 1) финиш (в спорте); 2) окончание, отделка; (v.) - 1) за-канчивать; 2) отделывать;

operation (n.) - 1) **onepaция**; 2) работа, действие; **occupation** (n.) - 1) **оккупация**; 2) род занятий, работа;

¹ Жирным шрифтом выделено значение слова, в котором оно обычно используется в русском языке.

control (n.) - 1) **контроль**; 2) управление, регулировка; (v.) -управлять (реже – контролировать);

figure (n.) - 1) фигура; 2) внешний вид; 3) иллюстрация, рисунок (в книге), диаграмма, чертеж; 4) цифра и др.; (v.) — изображать графически;

character (n.) - 1) **характер**; 2) характеристика; 3) фигура, личность; 4) действующее лицо (в пьесе); 5) буква и др.;

```
instrument (n.) - 1) инструмент; 2) прибор.
```

Перевод таких слов нужно запомнить.

Таким образом, если известное значение интернационального слова не подходит в данном контексте, следует обратиться к словарю и отыскать в нем то значение, которое наиболее правильно передаст его смысл.

3. Слова, сходные по звучанию, но имеющие совершенно различные значения в русском и английском языках, так называемые «ложные друзья переводчика» [4, с. 54], например:

```
ассигасу (п.) — точность (а не аккуратность); сатега (п.) — фото(кино)аппарат (а не камера); data (п.) — данные (а не дата); fabric (п.) — фабрикат, ткань, изделие (а не фабрика); graph (п.) — график, диаграмма (а не графа); graphic (adj.) — наглядный, графический (а не график); instance (п.) — пример, случай и др. (а не инстанция); list (п.) — список, перечень, инвентарь и др. (а не лист); magazine (п.) — журнал, склад боеприпасов (а не магазин); manufacture (п.) — производство и др. (а не мануфактура); principal (adj.) — главный (а не принципиальный).
```

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences paying attention to the international words.

- 1. The temperature at the Sun's surface is above 5500 degrees Centigrade.
- 2. The Sun's diameter is 109 times that of the Earth and its mass is 330000 times greater.
- 3. Nine planets with their satellites revolve round the Sun due to the force of universal gravitation.
- 4. The Sun is a giant natural hydrogen bomb, equivalent to millions of man-made ones where the thermonuclear reaction proceeds continuously.
- 5. It is necessary to find effective methods of utilizing this immense supple of free energy.

- 6. The atmosphere of Jupiter is completely different from our atmosphere.
- 7. The new hydroelectric station is much more powerful than the first hydroelectric one.
 - 8. There are many technical journals in our study.
 - 9. There are some basic operations at any workshop.
- 10. The tool if self is very small in comparison with the mechanism that is to direct it.
 - 11. Technological progress improves accuracy of machine-tools.
- 12. Since machine-tools become faster and more complex, automatic measurements and inspection ought to be of great importance.
 - 13. Automatic is one of the main factors of engineering progress.
- 14. The main principle of such a flexible line is that it can be switched over from one product to another.
- 15. Russia and other highly industrialized countries begin making use of flexible modules and automated workshops on a broad basis.

ТЕМА 12. ФРАЗОВЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ

Фразовые глаголы (глагольные словосочетания) — это устойчивые сочетания глагола и наречия, либо глагола и предлога, либо глагола с предлогом и наречием одновременно. Для второго компонента фразовых глаголов в русскоязычной лингвистике общепринятого названия не выработано; для удобства изложения будем называть их «особыми глагольными наречиями» (ОГН).

Наиболее распространенными ОГН являются: *up, down, in, out, on, off, away, back.* Эти слова соединяются с глаголами в сочетания, значение которых иногда прозрачно:

Take your hat **off**. — **Снимите** шляпу.

Put your hat **on**. – **Hadeньте** шляпу.

Иногда значение этих глаголов идиоматично:

Put off a meeting. — **Отложить** встречу.

Многие ОГН сходны по виду с обычными предлогами.

I ran down the hill. — \mathcal{A} сбежал c холма.

В состав фразового глагол $run\ down$ — $ocmanoвиться,\ истоициться,\ кончиться$ входит ОГН down.

Сравните:

The clock has run down. — Y часов кончился завод (часы остановились).

The battery has **ran down**. — Батарея **села**. Their car **ran down** a pedestrian. — Их автомобиль **сбил** пешехода.

Ниже приведен список наиболее употребляемых фразовых глаголов (табл. 12.1).

Таблица 12.1 Фразовые глаголы

Фразовый	Перевод	
глагол		
apply for (a job)	подавать заявление о приеме на работу	
be fond of	любить, нравиться	
be interested in	интересоваться	
be tired of	уставать	
break down	нарушать (планы и т.п.)	
bring up	вскармливать, воспитывать	
call back	перезвонить по телефону (позже)	
congratulate with	поздравлять	
depend on	зависеть	
get in	приходить домой	
give up	бросить, отказаться от чего-л.	
give over	отказаться	
go on	продолжать	
grow up	взрослеть	
insist on	настаивать	
look after	присматривать, заботиться	
look forward to	ожидать предвкушать что-л.	
look for	искать, подыскивать, присматривать	
look up	искать (в справочнике)	
put away	отказываться (от мысли, привычки)	
put out	тушить, гасить, выключать	
put through	соединить по телефону	
run down	сбить (машиной)	
speak up	говорить громко и отчетливо	
succeed in	удаваться, преуспевать, иметь успех	
take up	заниматься, продолжать, отнимать время	
take on	приступать к работе, приниматься за работу	
turn up	усиливать, прибавлять, увеличивать (громкость, яр-	
	кость и т.п.)	

Тренировочные упражнения

	Ex. Choose the	rignt variant.		
	1. Sarah	jogging in ord	er to lose weight.	
	a) took up;	b) took over;	c) took off;	d) took down.
	2. David	to respect his	family.	
	a) was brought o	out;	b) was brought d) was brought	t away;
	c) was brought of	off;	d) was brought	t up.
	3. Can you ask	Jan to call me as	soon as she	?
	a) gets in;	b) gets on;	c) gets after;	d) gets round.
	4. The secretary	y her nu	mber in the	ne telephone book.
	a) looked up;	b)	looked in;	
	c) looked for	ward; d)	looked down.	
	5. Richard was	by a car	and taken to hosp	ital.
	a) run away;	b) run down;	c) run into;	d) run across.
	6. The new man	nager will	next week.	
			c) take on;	d) take off.
		alf an hour		
		b) lookir		
		d) lookir		
			so he could listen to	o the news.
		b) turned		
		d) turned		
	9. It took the fi	remen three hours	s to the fin	e.
	a) put on;	b) put out;	c) put off;	d) put down.
	10. We began w	ork at 3 p.m. and	till 9 p.m	. 1\ 1
			c) go after;	
1 • 41		Marry and me wo	ould like to	you your
birth		1.)		
	a) congratulate.	to; b)	congratulate from	om;
	· ·		congratulate wit	
			in one-pare	nt rammes.
		ıt; b)		
	12 Ara you	o; d) working for u	are brought on.	
	a) interested in:	WOLKING TOLK	a) interested at:	d) interested with.
	-	The state of the s	ng foreign languag	
			c) fond for;	
		fashion.		d) folid iii.
	a) interested in	h) interested or	o ann 1.	ith; d) interested at.
			eeing you at Christ	
			c) in;	d) to.
	α <i>j</i> –,	o) willi,	<i>c)</i> III,	u) 10.

17. It depended _	us wha	t flight to choo	ose.	
a) –;	b) on;	c) from;	d) at.	
18 I can't hear vo	ou Please so	eak !		
a) up;	b) off;	c) ove	r;	d) across.
19. I asked the red	ceptionist to	put me	to the mana	ger.
a) from;	b) with;	c) awa	y;	d) through.
20. I'm sure they	will be very	interested	our sugg	gestion.
a) in;	b) at;	c) with	1;	d) for.
21. I hope you su	cceed	_ finding the jo	ob you want	t.
a) with;	b) ou	ıt;	c) on;	d) in.
22. I'm to	seeing you	again.		
a) looking forwar c) looking up; 23. Where is Jane	d;	b) lool	cing for;	
c) looking up;		d) lool	cing at.	
23. Where is Jane	? I am tired	waitin	g?	
a) about;	b) of;	c) with	1;	d) to.
24. I'll look	your child	dren if you are	busy tomor	row.
a) like;	b) for;	c) at;		d) after.
25. Chris is trying	g to give	smoking.		
a) up;	b) from;	c) dow	'n;	d) out.
26. Your mother	called. She w	ants you to ca	ll her	tonight.
a) off;	b) back;	c) for;		d) over.
27. Paul vi	siting his par	rents.		
a) insisted of;	b) insisted	to; c) insis	sted –;	d) insisted on.
28. Sam	so fast. I thi	nk he's going	to be a tall g	guy.
a) is growing fromc) is growing out;	n;	b) is g	rowing over	···
c) is growing out;		d) is g	rowing up.	
29. It depended _	us wha	t flight to choc	ose.	
a) on;	b) from;	c) at:		d) –.

TEMA 13. ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ (THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE)

Придаточные подлежащие стоят перед сказуемым и вводятся союзами **that, what, who, where** и др.:

What you say is not quite clear. — **To, что вы говорите**, не совсем ясно. Where I lost my watch is a mystery. — Γ de я потерял часы, для меня загадка.

Придаточные сказуемые в предложении являются именной частью сказуемого главного предложения, поэтому всегда следуют за глаголомсвязкой и вводятся союзами **that, who** и др.

Обратите внимание на способы перевода глагола-связки, который предшествует придаточному сказуемому:

The difficulty of extramural education is **that** it demands great effort from the students. — Трудность заочного образования заключается в том, **что** оно требует от студентов большого напряжения.

Придаточные дополнительные следуют за сказуемым и вводятся союзами **that, if, whether** и др.:

Everybody knows **that** one must work regularly to master a foreign language. – Всем известно, **что** надо работать регулярно, чтобы овладеть иностранным языком.

I am not sure **if (whether)** he will take part in this conference. — \mathcal{A} не уверен, примет $\mathbf{n}\mathbf{u}$ он участие в этой конференции.

Придаточные дополнительные могут соединяться с главным предложением и бессоюзной связью:

I think we will complete our research in time. — Я думаю, (что) мы завершим свое исследование вовремя.

Придаточные определительные могут служить определениями к любому члену предложения, выраженному существительным. Они вводятся союзными словами и союзами who, whom, whose, which, that, when, where, why:

A number whose value is to be found is called an unknown number. — Число, значение которого надо найти, называется неизвестным числом.

Придаточные определительные могут соединяться с главным предложением и без союзного слова, если союзное слово не является подлежащим придаточного:

The text (which) the student is reading is about our Russian cosmonauts. — Текст, который читает этот студент, это текст о наших российских космонавтах.

Если бессоюзное придаточное определительное предложение заканчивается предлогом, то при переводе на русский язык предлог ставится перед союзным словом, которое в русском предложении не может быть опущено:

The method we objected to did not give good results. — Метод, против которого мы возражали, не дал хороших результатов.

Придаточные обстоятельственные указывают на обстоятельства, при которых совершается действие. Они подразделяются на придаточные места, времени, причины, цели, условия и т.д. Например, придаточное причины:

He looked through his notes very carefully, **as** he was going to make a report at a conference. — Он тщательно просмотрел свои записи, **так как** собирался делать отчет на конференции.

Тренировочные упражнения

Ex. 1. Translate into Russian.

- 1. Although the frost was severe we continued working in the open year.
- 2. Since there are no economic implications to such a distinction, there should be no difference in the decision.
 - 3. We know Professor N. whose articles were published in 1980.
 - 4. He was the first who referred to her work.
 - 5. The reason why he did not come is not clear.
 - 6. Pernedo's article is the only one that analyzes the system.
 - 7. We must learn to obey orders before we are qualified to give them.
- 8. Consistency will increase and ambiguity will decrease as the process progresses.
 - 9. Problems cannot be solved until they are accurately defined.
 - 10. If the team he supports wins he is elected, if it loses he is disappointed.
- 11. If I could always read I should never feel the want of society. (G. Byron).
- 12. If the tools were used with greater force the depth of the cut would be affected.
 - 13. A computer will do only what it is precisely told to do.
 - 14. They ask when they should deliver the apparatus.
- 15. We do not know whether such service stations are useful and convenient in practice.

Ex. 2. Translate the conjunctionless subordinate clause.

- 1. The methods we have developed extend straightforwardly to these designs.
 - 2. The few facts he mentioned were interesting and important.
 - 3. This is the property I wish to explain.
 - 4. We did not know he was responsible for this work.
 - 5. We are sure it is possible to change the conditions.
 - 6. All this implies the data was correct.
 - 7. It was stated the conclusion was right.
 - 8. A man is known by the company he keeps.
 - 9. The characteristics we are interested in are shape and size.
 - 10. Every task a computer does must be programmed.

TESTS

Тема 1. Пассивный залог

Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets in the appropriate tense form of the Passive Voice. 1. The draft resolution (to discuss) ______ yesterday. 2. The book *(to publish)* _____ next year. 3. A new metro line (to build) ______ in our city last year. 4. Wood and stone (to use) ______ for building houses.
5. Many old houses (to reconstruct) ______ in our city every year. 6. I don't know how this word (to pronounce) 7. This work (to finish) _____ in two days.
8. The Moscow University (to found) _____ in 1755, and in 1819 St. Petersburg University (to establish) 9. At present our plant (to equip) _____ with modern machinery. 10. The letter (to send) ______ tomorrow.

11. I (to tell) _____ about it last week. 11. I (to tell) _____ about it last week.

12. He (to offer) _____ a ticket to the concert, but he refused. 13. New equipment (to produce) _____ at the plant in future.

14. The newspapers (to bring) _____ the day after tomorrow. 15. Children (to teach) ______ foreign languages at school.

16. I thought that the goods (to deliver) _____ by air the following week. 17. I knew that the documents (to sign) by the director when he came. 18. I (to tell) _____ an interesting story the other day.

19. I was sure that prices (to reduce) _____ two months later. 20. A famous scientist (to invite) ______ to work at our laboratory next month. 21. New methods (to develop) ______ now.
22. Show me, where the new theatre (to build) _____ i your city. 23. When we came to Kiev that building (to reconstruct) _____. 24. The book we have expected so much (to discuss) hot-25. The electronic equipment (to design) _____ now to speed up production. 26. Tests on new materials (to conduct) _____ by our department for a whole month last year. 27. St. Isaac Cathedral (to build) ______ for 40 years: from

1818 to 1858.

28. The engine (to repair)	when anoth	er machine went out
of order.		
29. For the whole 19 th century thore	ough investigation	s (to make)
to explore the depths of nature.		,
30. Many houses (to build)	in	our city lately.
30. Many houses (to build) in ou	r country to develo	op higher education.
32. This book (to recommend)	to	o us by our teacher.
33. The letter just (to send)		
34. These agreements already <i>(to co</i>	onclude)	
35. The question (to solve)	, <u></u>	by yesterday.
36. By the time he returned the hou	se (to repair)	
37. When you phoned us the work a	already (to finish)	
38. When we came to the port the g	oods just (to ship)	
39. All the students (to examine)		by tomorrow.
40. The contract (to type)	befor	e the director comes
to the office.		
		by next month.
41. The goods <i>(to deliver)</i> 42. New machinery <i>(to produce)</i>	by the e	end of next summer.
43. They said that the engine (to rep	pair)	by next day.
44. He informed us that the building		
by the following year.	· /	
Ex. 2. Choose the right variant.		
1. I went to the party although I _		invited.
a) was not;	b) had not being	· ·
a) was not; c) has not been;	d) had not.	_
2. The people on the island knew t	that they	forgotten.
a) had not been;c) have not been;	b) were not bein	g;
	d) were not bein	
		by Monday.
a) will be done	b) will have bee	n done;
c) has been;	d) was done.	
4. Please do not enter the office. T	he boss	interviewed.
a) has been; b) was;		d) is being.
5 put on t	the list?	
a) Is your name;	b) Has your nan	ne;
c) Was your name being;	d) Is your name	being.
6. Suddenly she realized that she _		followed.
a) was; b) had been;	c) was being;	d) has been.
7. The cashier found that all the m		
a) had been gone; b) was gone;	c) has gone;	d) has been gone.

8. Only English	spoken in this classroom.
a) is being; b) is;	c) was; d) has.
9. Don't worry. You	told which place to go.
a) have been;	b) will have being;
c) will be;	d) have told.
10. I parked the car in the wrong place	ce and
a) the police ticked me;	b) was ticked by the police;
c) have been ticked by the police;	d) had been ticked by the police.
11. Taxes will again be	next year.
a) risen; b) raised;	c) rose; d) raise.
12. This programme	twice a day.
a) is broadcast;	b) is broadcasted;
c) is broadcasting;	d) is been broadcast.
13. A new big supermarket	next week in our street.
a) will be open;	b) will be opened;
c) will be opening;	d) will have opened.
14. I five th	ousand pounds by the bank.
a) lend; b) borrowed;	c) was borrowed; d) was lent.
15. By the end of the year all the chil	dren in the town
a) will be vaccinated;	b) will vaccinate;
c) will have vaccinated;	d) will have been vaccinated.
16. This newspaper	very well.
a) sells; b) is sold;	c) is being sold; d) had been sold.
17. He to be a	very talented singer.
a) thinks;	b) is thinking;
c) is being thought;	d) is thought.
18. The shop	24 hours.
a) is opened; b) is open;	c) opens; d) is opening.
19. The tourists	to the island early in the morning.
a) were flown;	b) were flowing;
c) had flown;	d) had been flown.
20. This famous actress f	From the stage only at the age of 90.
a) was retired;	b) had retired;
c) had been retired;	d) retired.
	in Massachusetts in 1636.
a) is being founded;	b) had been founded;
c) was founded;	d) was found.
22. The bridge	by tomorrow morning.
a) will have been reconstructed;	b) is being reconstructed;
c) will be reconstructed:	d) will have been reconstruct.

Тема 2. Модальные глаголы

	x. 1. Fill in the blanks with 'can' or 'to When Carol has passed her driving				
from Jai			mre a car		
		see when	re we are.		
3.	When the fog lifts we You've put too much in your suitcase	vou never	carry it.		
4.	you use t	he word 'processor'	?		
5.	He skate all day	and dance all night			
6.	He skate all day We borrow umbrellas from	the Smiths; so we di	dn't get wet.		
7.	I knew London so I	advise Betty	what to see.		
8.	If you had the right tools	you have repaire	d the fence?		
	I speak to Mr. White, please?				
10	O. If I knew Greek I	_ tell you what this n	neans.		
E .	x. 2. Insert the correct form of 'may', '	'might'.			
1.	He said that it sno	W.			
2.	I give you the han	d with the dishes?			
3.	You should buy now, prices	go up.			
4.	You should buy now, prices leave it with you?				
5.	I'd have thought you ren	nember your mother	's birthday.		
6.	I don't think I'll succeed but I	as wel	1 try.		
7.	If we got there early we	get better ti	ckets.		
8.	I come in?				
9.	If I bought a lottery ticket I	win \$ 5 0	00.		
10	0. Students not bring anyt	thing into the examin	nation room.		
	x. 3. Fill in blanks with 'must' or 'to h				
1.	You read this book She felt unwell and le	; it's great.			
2.	She felt unwell andle	ave early.			
3.	I hadn't enough cash and I	pay by chear	ue.		
4.	You do what moth	ner says.			
5.	British pupils stay at s	school till the age of	16.		
6.	I was lost and	ask the policeman th	ne way.		
7.	The buses were all full, I The chambermaids usually	get a tax	κi.		
8.	The chambermaids usually	do a lot of w	vork.		
9.	It is very suppery outside; it	nave snowed in	n the night.		
10	O. I leave home at 7 a.m. 1	not to be late for my	job.		
\boldsymbol{E}	x. 4. Fill in the blanks with 'must', 'sh	ould' or 'ought to'.	Use the cor-		
	n of the Infinitive.				
1.	You (to be) abser	now)	this.		
2.	You (to be) abser	it for such a long tir	ne. Everyone		
forgot v	011				

3. Though it is a very	unpleasant mission, I feel I (to tell)
you the truth.	
4. We had a wonderf	al time at that party. You (to be) there.
5. Let's tell him all as	s it is. He (to understand)
6. You (to apologize) when you saw that his feel-
ings were hurt.	
7. She is a very expended.	rienced doctor. You (to consult) her.
8. She (not to say)	about such things in the child's
presence. Now you see the re	
	that it might come to that.
10. If they had been w	arned in time, they (to be) there by
now.	, <u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>
11. He gave you just t	he feeling of assurance, of confidence that a doctor
(to give)	
Ex. 5. Fill in the blank	ks with 'ought to', 'to be to', 'to have to'.
1. Don't contradict her	r, you respect her age.
2. She is not a bad	sort, if somewhat capricious; so you sometimes
рі	at up with her whims.
	awkward. He felt that something
be done, or else the party wo	
	-
	r 'need' with the correct form of the Infinitive in
brackets.	
1. We (not to hurry)	we have half an hour before the
train starts.	
2. You (not to come) _	so early, now you will have to wait.
3. You (not to give)	the child so much money. It wil
spoil him.	
4. You (not to return)	the money so soon. I could wait.
5. You <i>(not to help)</i> _	him with this work. He could
have managed it himself.	
6. You (not to go)	into this at present. They've clear
forgotten about it.	
Ex. 7. Fill in 'mustn't	
	ring the bell, I've got a key.
2. Exit doors	be blocked during the performance.
3. You	drink this, it is poison.
4. We	drink this, it is poison. drive fast. We have a lot of time.
5. You	drive fast; there is a speed limit.
6. We	make any noise or we'll wake a baby.
7. We	make any more sandwiches, we have enough.

8. You smoke in 9. We climb a	n the auditorium. any higher, we can see very well from			
the platform.	any ingher, we can see very wen from			
-	pping. The fridge is full.			
Ex. 8. Match the two parts of the s	sentences.			
1. Don't worry,	a) a great success with the readers.			
2. What is done	b) and leave you alone.			
3. How dare you	c) they might be going here and will be here in a moment.			
4. The book must be	d) the train is leaving at 11.30.			
5. You might have offered your help	· ·			
6. I can play tennis well	f) but he changes his mind.			
7. I must have seen you somewhere,	g) when he got into trouble.			
8. You needn't hurry	h) your face is familiar to me.			
9. I can hardly go away	i) say such things.			
10. Bill was to have started work last	j) but I'm unable to play now,			
week,	I'm not well.			
Тема 3. Причастие				
Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with the a en below.	appropriate form of the Participles giv-			
1. The ships	many years ago are not as convenient			
as the modern ones.				
2. What is the number of ships	in the past few years?			
3. The number of ships	for the population of country			
is rapidly growing.				
4. The workers th	is ship used new construction methods. d new methods in			
	d new methods in			
shipbuilding.				
	in the building of ships proved			
more effective.	- 1 - 4 C/1 1 4			
	oducts of this plant to			
8. These are the samples of products last month.				
o. These are the samples of produc				

Building, being built, built, used, using, sent, sending, being sent.

Ex. 2. Replace the Infinitive in brackets by the appropriate form of the
Participle.
1. She stayed (to lock) in her room, (to refuse)
to come downstairs.
2. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (to work)
as an interpreter for many years.
3. They went out as they had come, (to see) nobody
and (to see) by no one on their way.
4. Except for the grand piano and the pianist (to sit)
before it, the stage was empty.
5. He looked so beautiful and peaceful, (to sit) in that
chair under the tree.
6. He looked at the scene (to shake) to the depth of his heart.
7. The boy came out of the water, all blue and (to shake)
from head to foot.
8. (To arrive) at the airport where he was to change,
he had to wait for three hours for the connection.
9. (<i>To arrive</i>) in the town about twenty years before,
he had succeeded thereafter beyond his wildest expectations.
10. (To support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk.
Ex. 3. Choose the appropriate form of the verbs. 1. She enters, (accompanying, being accompanying, accompanied) by her mother.
2. (Arousing, have been aroused, aroused) by the crash, he leapt to his feet.
3. (Warned, having been warned, warning) about the bandits, he left his
valuables at home.
4. (Convincing, convinced, convince) that they were trying to poison
him, he refused to eat anything.
5. Tom, (horrified, having horrified, horrifying) at what he had done,
could at first say nothing.
6. Jones and Smith came in, <i>(followed, following, follow, have followed)</i>
by their wives.
7. (Stunning, stunned, stun) by the blow, Peter fell heavily.
8. The new job (offered, offering, has offered) to me lately seems to be
very interesting.
9. She looked at the table. There was a loaf of brown bread <i>(divides, di-</i>
viding, divided, was divided) into two halves.
10. The animals (catched, caught, catching) in the morning struggled fu-
riously.
110 worj.

- 11. And (said, have said, was saying, saying) this he threw himself back in the armchair.
 - 12. (Having got, getting) what he wanted he took his hat and left.
- 13. By this time (getting used, having got used, got used) to the atmosphere of the big city, he no longer felt a stranger.
- 14. I spent about ten minutes (turn, having turned, turning) over the sixteen pages of *The Guardian* before I found the main news and articles.
- 15. I felt refreshed and rested (sleeping, having slept, slept) for eight hours.
- 16. (Was, be, being) so far away he still feels himself part of the community.
- 17. The boy came out of the water (was shaking, having shaken, shaking) from top to toe.
- 18. (Having completed, completing, having complete, completed) all our preparations we hired a taxi and hurried off.
 - 19. (Supported, supporting) her by the arm he helped her out of the taxi.
- 20. (Never experienced, having experienced never, never have experienced, having never experienced) such difficulties she was at a loss.

Ex. 4. Choose the right variant.

	1. By the end of	21 st century there will b	ee 600 million people around the
world	<u> </u>	in absolute pover	ty.
	a) living;	b) having lived;	c) lived.
	2. The problem	is	s of great significance.
	a) discussing;	b) being discussed;	c) discussed.
	3. I saw her	the	street.
	a) crossed;	b) having crossed;	c) crossing.
	4. While	the book I came	e across a lot of interesting facts.
	a) studying;	b) study;	e across a lot of interesting facts. c) having studied.
	5	a One Day Tra	vel card not only gives you a re-
turn to	o London from you	ur local station, it is also	your passport to unlimited trav-
el on l		ubes and most buses.	
	a) To buy;	b) Buying;	c) Having bought.
	6	her address I co	uld not write her a letter.
	· ·	b) Without knowing;	*
	7. The holiday	Th	anksgiving Day is now observed
on the	e fourth Thursday		
	a) calling;	b) called;	c) to be called.
	8. Norman rule in	troduced Norman Frenc	ch language, feudalism, and min-
istrati			
	a) based;	b) being based;	c) having been based.

9.	James Watt pat	ented his steam	engine,		_ mainly for
	g, in 1769.				
a)	using;	b) is used;	c)	used.	
Te	ема 4. Герунди	ıй			
E	x. 1. Choose the	right variant.			
1.	J	plants and anim	als deep in th	ne ocean, science	e may find a
cure for	some of the mo	st serious huma	n diseases.		
a)	On studying;	b) By st	udying;	c) Having so to the country. c) to having	tudied.
2.	He is looking for	orward		to the country.	
a)	to going;	b) for go	oing;	c) to having	gone.
3.	William the Co	nqueror is famo	ous for	E	ngland.
a)	having been co	nquered; b) conquering:	E c) having co	onquered.
4.	William II, 7 th	Duke of Norma	ndy founded	his dynasty	
Harold I	I to become Wi	lliam I of Engla	nd.		
a)	for killing;	b) in kil	ling;	c) by killing	5.
5.	Did he deserve			?	
a)	praising;	b) havir	ng been praise	c) by killing ? ed; c) being pra ir letter. c) posting.	ised.
6.	I remember		you	ır letter.	
a)	having posted;	b) poste	d;	c) posting.	
7.	The inspector s	uspected him _		the	cop.
a)	of having killed	d; b) for k	illing;	the c) in being letting a girl die in	killed.
8.	His career crash	hed when he $_$	let	tting a girl die in	a car crash.
a)	should be accus	sed of; b) was accused	d of; c) is a	accused of.
\boldsymbol{E}	x. 2. Choose the	o correct prepos	sition 'for'. '	of', 'to', 'at', 'in	,
1	What was the	reason	leaving so	early?	•
2	No one could	surpass him in	_ reaving se c the art	cheating	
	We met, desp				
4	The boy show	red no surprise	beir	ng shown a real e	elephant
5	He has a dread	dful habit	smoking	in hed	Top IIIIII
6.	The pupils sho	owed great inter	est	learning foreign	languages
7.	The disappoin	ntment	being dece	ived could be ea	asily read in
his eyes.		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			<i>y</i>
	This is a good	chance	solving ou	r problem.	
9.	The criminals	prepared a good		escaping from	the prison.
10). My daughter l	nas no intention	ge	tting married.	1
				-	

Тема 5. Отглагольное существительное

Ex. Find and translate the sentences a) with the Participle I; b) with the Gerund; c) with the Verbal Noun.

- 1. You should think before *speaking*.
- 2. After *finding* the new word in the dictionary, I wrote it down and went on *reading*.
 - 3. He spent much time on *the copying* of his literature lectures.
 - 4. What do you mean by *saying* that?
- 5. The students found *the reading* of English newspapers rather difficult at first.
 - 6. Instead of *going* home after school, the girls went for a walk.
 - 7. Chalk is used for *writing* on the blackboard.
 - 8. We sat by the river-side *listening* to *the running* of the water.
 - 9. The cleaning of the room was done by the girls.
 - 10. Working in the garden is very good for the health of people.
- 11. I stopped *knocking* at the door and began *waiting* for my father to come.
 - 12. She praised herself for *having* come.
 - 13. The child stopped *crying* and quieted down to hard *thinking*.
- 14. The old clock kept *ticking* on the mantelpiece, as if *counting* the seconds left before *the coming* of daylight.

Тема 6. Инфинитив

Ex. 1. Choose the right answer.

1. I want	the house where Pushkin was born.
a) see;	b) to see.
2. I would like you	his invitation.
a) accept;	b) to accept.
3. Teachers make me_	homework well.
a) do;	b) to do.
4. The child was made	to bed at 9 p.m.
a) go;	b) to go.
5. Please, let me	the news and then we'll go out.
a) watch;	b) to watch.
6. I used	_ a lot when I was younger.
a) smoke;	b) to smoke.
7. You mustn't	to me like that.
a) talk;	b) to talk.
8. I think we'd better _	of here.
a) get;	b) to get.

9. So, why not	there right aw	vay?				
a) go;	9. So, why not there right away? a) go; b) to go.					
10. This bag is too he	10. This bag is too heavy for her					
a) carry;	a) carry; b) to carry.					
11. – May I	in? – Yes, please.					
a) come;	b) to come					
12. Will you help me	e this b	ox?				
a) move;	b) to move.					
13. It is better	sure than sorry.					
a) be;						
14. It is up to you	14. It is up to you all these rules.					
a) learn;	b) to learn.					
15. We decided	extra risks.					
a) to not take;	b) not to take;	c) not take.				
16. We got the girls	dinner.					
a) make;	b) to make.					
17. The students	this project	by the end of May.				
a) to finish;	b) are finish;	c) are to finish.				
18. I am sorry	you, but your n	narks are not very good.				
a) disappoint;	a) disappoint; b) to disappoint.					
19. We could tomorrow.						
a) go fishing;	b) to go fishing.					
20. Our class need _	the test.					
a) rewrite;	b) to rewrite.					
Ev. 2 Chaosa aith a	the Conund on the Infin	niting.				
	the Gerund or the Infin	y. I could not help (laughing,				
to laugh) all the time.	ned a very fullity conted	y. I could not help (laughing,				
	ober (taking to take) the	money?				
 Don't you remember (taking, to take) the money? My friend could not help me (doing, to do) the test. 						
<u> </u>	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	4. Please, remember (returning, to return) the key.5. This report needs (checking, to check).					
6. We need <i>(finding</i>	,					
		r because the price for petrol				
went up.	ng, to go) to work by ca	r because the price for petror				
-	ng So they stopped <i>(byy</i>	ing to huv) food				
8. They were starving. So they stopped (buying, to buy) food.9. He tried (digging, to dig) but each time his hand began to hurt.						
	10. Your work requires (checking, to check).					
10. Tour work requi	tes (encening, to enceny.					
Ex. 3. Choose the suitable verbal form.						
	1. Teddy's words made me uncomfortable.					
a) to feel;	b) feeling;	c) feel.				
2. Mrs. Pottson allo	wed her guests	in the living room.				
a) to smoke;	b) smoking;	c) smoke.				

3. Has the secretary c	ome yet? I wa	ant to have my papers
a) to type;	b) type;	c) typed. with her kittens. I couldn't tear
4. I watched my cat		with her kittens. I couldn't tear
myself away from that funny	sight.	
a) played;	b) playing;	c) to play.
		my Dad.
a) marry;	b) to marry	y; c) married.
6. Our English teache	r told us	shy and speak English
as much as possible.		
a) not to feel;	b) not feel;	; c) felt.
7. I have to get my ph	otograph	for a new passport.
a) took;	b) take;	c) taken.
8. There wasn't much	traffic in the	e street. I saw a little girl
the road.		
a) crossed;		c) to cross.
9. I have never heard		·
a) sang;		c) singing.
		Tom's company.
a) to avoid;		
11. We expected the H	arrisons	later than usual.
a) to arrive;	b) arrive;	c) arrived.
12. What makes you		such rash actions?
a) do;	b) to do;	c) doing.
13. The rain seems		. Call the children. I don't want them
·		
a) to be, to be got wet t	_	
b) to be starting, to get		
c) to have started, to ha	•	
d) to have been started.	-	
	•	in Massachusetts, is known
by the Pilgrims who arrived o	on <i>The Mayfl</i> o	ower in 1620.
a) to be established;		
b) to have established;		
c) to have been establish	-	
d) to have been establish		
		to the news. They seem
a) to be listening, to be		
b) to listen, to be excite		
c) to have been listening	•	
d) to have listened, to b	e being excit	ted.

16. He is sure	a liar. Everyl	body heard him	n that in so
many words.		•	
a) to be, to say; b) be	e, say; c)	to be, say;	d) be, to say.
17. When I came in, the	ne discussion see	emed	to an end. They
appeared patienc			
a) to have been coming,			
b) to be coming, to be lo			
c) to come, to lose, to be	•	3 /	
d) to have come, to have	•	being ready.	
18. Jack, you seem			already 100 miles. I
am afraid. I want you	the spec	ed till 40 miles.	
a) to have driven, slow	down:		
b) to drive, to slow dow			
c) to be driving, to be sl			
d) to be driving, to slow	_		
19. He is likely		dav.	
a) came;		coming;	c) to come
20. He is thought	n	ow.	0) 00 001110
20. He is thought a) to study; b) to	be studying:	c) to have l	been studied
Ex. Choose the right v 1. The dog looks as if	it		
a) was;	b) had been.		
2. Sara cried as if som	ething terrible _	<u> </u>	·
a) happened;	b) had happene	ed.	
3. It seems as if he	to sa	ay something ru	ude.
a) is going;	b) were going.		
4. Everybody treats me			
a) am having;		c) ha	ave.
5. They are talking as	if they	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
a) had never quarreled;	b) never quarre	eled.	.1 ·
6. She told me what to			everytning.
	b) had known.		<u> </u>
7. The boy smiled as is			lullily.
a) remembered;			to brooths
8. I wish you			
a) not smoked;9. I wish I	b) didn't smok	c, c) Ilê r Snanish	iun i Sinokeu.
a) would can;	b) will be able;	r spanisn.	auld
10. We wish it			
a) is;	b) was;		
,,	- <i>j</i> ··· •• ••	-) ••	

	11. The chilling wished	l he	at all.
	a) wouldn't be born;	b) hadn't been born;	c) weren't born.
	12. They shook hands as	s if they	each other for a long time
	a) knew;	b) had known	o his party next weeks. c) would have come.
	13. He wishes his friend	ls to	his party next weeks.
	a) came;	b) would come;	c) would have come.
	14. I don i understand y	ou as mough we	on different planets.
	a) would live;	b) lived.	
	15. He smiled as if he _	read	my thoughts.
	15. He smiled as if he _ a) can; 16. They behave as if no	b) could;	c) would.
	16. They behave as if no	othing	
	a) happened;	b) had happened.	
	17. Look healthy as thou	ugh you	jogging every morning.
	a) would go;	b) went;	c) had gone.
	18. You sound as if you a) have;	a s	ore throat.
	a) have;	b) had.	
	19. I feel so tired as if I	,	all day.
	a) worked;	b) had worked.	
	20. He began to tremble		a ghost.
	a) saw;		8
	Тема 9. Вопросителы		
ʻrigh	 Have ever you been What means this wo 	es and correct them. to Thailand? —	If there is no mistake, write m here?
ʻrigh	 Have ever you been What means this wo How much costs it t 	es and correct them. to Thailand? —	n here? —
ʻrigh	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it t 4. We can't remember	to Thailand? — ord? — to fly to Australia from	n here? –r passports. –
'righ	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it t 4. We can't remember 5. Had the play already 6. Now, come and sit of	to Thailand? –to fly to Australia from where did we put our	n here? –r passports. –
	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it t 4. We can't remember 5. Had the play already 6. Now, come and sit of	to Thailand? –to Thailand? –to fly to Australia from where did we put out y started when you go down. Would you like	n here? r passports ot to the theatre?
	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it t 4. We can't remember 5. Had the play already 6. Now, come and sit o 7. How long did it you	to Thailand? –to Thailand? –to fly to Australia from where did we put out y started when you go down. Would you like	n here? – r passports. – ot to the theatre? – e to explain what is the prob-
	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it t 4. We can't remember 5. Had the play already 6. Now, come and sit o 7. How long did it you 8. Now I understand w	to Thailand? –to Thailand? –to fly to Australia from where did we put out y started when you go down. Would you like take to get here? –	n here? r passports ot to the theatre? e to explain what is the prob-
	1. Have ever you been 2. What means this wo 3. How much costs it to 4. We can't remember 5. Had the play already 6. Now, come and sit to 7. How long did it you 8. Now I understand wo 9. Excuse me. Can you	to Thailand? — to fly to Australia from where did we put our y started when you go down. Would you like a take to get here? — why didn't you tell me a tell me where the did	n here? r passports ot to the theatre? e to explain what is the prob-

Ex. 2. Choose the		
1	there a good connection	from the airport to the city?
a) Are.	h) Does:	c) Ic
2	Washington the first	city in history to be built for
the purpose of governm	ents?	
a) Was;	b) Did;	c) Were.
3	you know where I can cl	hange my flight booking?
a) Are;	b) Does;	c) Do.
4. Is the US legi	slative branch made up of to	wo three houses?
a) or;	b) than;	c) and.
5. May the write	er criticize prais	se the actions of some public
officials?		
a) or;	b) but; ions million	c) than.
6. Are there billi	ions million	ns of stars in the Galaxy?
a) if;	b) whether;	c) or.
7. Do the citizen		ions directly indirectly?
a) if;	b) and;	c) or.
8. Let's go to the	e party tonight,	?
a) will you;	b) will us;	c) will we.
9. Don't be late,		?
a) will you;	b) do you;	c) don't you.
10. We could turn	b) do you; n down the road, b) could we;	?
a) did we;	b) could we;	c) couldn't we.
11. She is perfect	ly willing to listen to reason	n, ?
a) is she;	b) isn't she;	c) does she.
12. There was no	national election last month	ı, ?
a) was there;	b) was it;	c) is there.
13. Who	b) was it; America?	,
a) did discover;	b) does discover;	c) discovered.
		_ to find new trade routes in
the 15 th century?		
a) do tried;	b) has tried;	c) did try.
15. What	booms and depress	sions in free economies?
a) causes;	b) is caused;	c) does cause.
16. What role	G. Washington	in the American Revolution?
a) had been pla	yed; b) is played;	c) did play. ? c) has been located.
17. Where	Washington, D.C	?
a) does locate;	b) is located;	c) has been located.
18. How many in	nposing buildings	in Washington, D.C.?
a) there are;	b) are there;	c) are where.
19. When	the Civil War	?
	b) had ended;	

	20. How long	у	ou to answe	r all the que	stions?
	20. How longa) was it take;	b) di	id it take;	c) i	t took.
	Тема 10. Условны	е предло	жения		
	Ex. 1. Put the verbs	in brack	ets into the	correct tens	es. Don't forget that
there	exist mixed types of	Condition	nal Sentence	es.	
	1. I had a sandwich	for lunch	. If I (to hav	ve)	a proper lunch, I
(not t	to feel)	so hun	gry now.		
	2. He told his friend	, "I'm no	t feeling ver	y well. I <i>(no</i>	ot to be)
here	today if I <i>(not to prom</i>	ıise)		to co	me."
	3. I can hardly keep	my eyes	open. If I ((to go)	to bed
earlie	er last night, I (not to b	be)		so tired no	W.
	4. He looked at his	watch wh	nile he was o	driving and	thought, "If I (not to
stop)	to get p	petrol, I (i	to be)	home	e now." (use 'might')
	5. If Jack (not to h	urt)	h	is ankle yes	sterday, he (to play)
	football th		*		
					id, "If I (to follow)
	my father's advi	ice, I (to t	<i>be)</i> m	uch happier	now." (use 'might')
	Ex. 2. Choose the ri	aht varia	ent using the	Condition	al Contonco
	1. Tell me about yo				
	a) meet;	our accision	b) will me	' het	ncat time.
	2. If the child wants	C	b) will life	im this toy!	
	a) will how	3,		inii tiiis toy:	
	a) will buy; 3. We	about it	for sure wi	nen we	home
	a) will know will re	_ aooat n	h) know v	will return:	c) will know, re-
turn.	a) will know, will re	turri,	o) know,	wiii ictain,	c) will know, ic
tuiii.	4. I need to think th	ne matter	over in case	e he	
			b) refuses.		·
	5. Do your best or 6	else vou	o) reruses.	Wil	th the group.
	5. Do your best or 6 a) won't catch up;		b) don't ca	atch up	ar out Brown.
	6. Mary	to us	s. unless Jac	k	
	a) doesn't speak, wil	ll leave:	.,		<u> </u>
	b) won't speak, leav				
	c) doesn't speak, lea				
	7. If they		, they		the train.
	a) take, won't miss;		, <u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>		
	b) will take, don't m	iss;			
	c) will take, won't m				

8.	the children	listen to me, when the	ney?
a) Do, will g			
b) Will, grov	w up;		
c) Will, will	•		
	_	ime, we	late for the concert.
a) won't con			
b) doesn't co	ome, will be;		
c) don't com	ie, will be.		
10. Why dor	n't you ask her,	when she	?
a) comes;		b) will con	ne.
11. I'm sure	we	_ back before it	dark .
a) are, gets;	b)	will be, will get;	dark . c) will be, gets.
12. I	the report t	today, if you	interrupting me.
a) finish, wil			
b) will finish	ı, stop;		
c) will finish	ı, will stop.		
13. We	our les	son, when you	your seats.
a) will start,	take; b)	start, will take;	c) will start, will take.
14. Would w	ve wait here unt	il they	us?
a) will call;		b) call.	
15. I	you w	hen I	ready.
		b) tell, will be;	
16. Let's do	the flat before	our parents	·
a) return;		b) will return;	c) returns.
17. When th	e right time	, I	you our family secret.
a) will come	, will open;		
b) comes, w	ill open;		
c) will come	-		
18. She said	that if he	the TV set	z, she out
of the window at o	nce.		
a) wouldn't	turn off, would	throw;	
b) didn't tur	n off, would thr	ow;	
c) wouldn't	turn off, would	throw.	
19. I asked h	nim what	, when they	the truth.
a) would hap	open, found out	· ,	
b) would hap	ppen, would fin	d out;	
c) happened	, would find out	t.	
20. When th	e weather	fine,	all the windows. The
child needs fresh a	ir.		
a) will be, w	rill open;	b) will be, open;	c) is, open.

KEYS TO TESTS

Тема 1

Ex. 1: 1) was discussed; 2) will be published; 3) was built; 4) are used; 5) are reconstructed; 6) is pronounced; 7) will be finished; 8) was founded, was established; 9) is being equipped; 10) will be sent; 11) was told; 12) was offered; 13) will be produced; 14) will be brought; 15) are taught; 16) would be delivered; 17) would be signed; 18) have been told; 19) would be reduced; 20) will be invited; 21) is being developed; 220 is being built; 23) was being reconstructed; 24) is being discussed; 25) is being designed; 260 were being conducted: 27) was being built; 28) was being repaired; 29) were being made; 30) have been built; 31) has been done / is being done; 32) was recommended; 33) has been sent; 340 have been concluded; 35) had been solved; 360 had been repaired; 37) had been finished; 380 had been shipped; 39) will have been examined; 40) will have been typed; 41) will have been delivered; 42)will have been produced; 43) would have been repaired; 44) would have been restored.

Ex. 2: 1) a; 2) a; 3) b; 4) d; 5) a; 6) c; 7) a; 8) b; 9) c; 10) b; 11) b; 12) b; 13) b; 14) d; 15) d; 16) b; 17) d; 18) b; 19) a; 20) d; 21) c; 22) a.

Тема 2

- *Ex. 1:* 1) could / was able to; 2) will be able to; 3) will (never) be able to; 4) can; 5) can / is able to; 6) were able to / could; 7) was able to / could; 8) could; 9) can; 10) could.
- *Ex.* 2: 1) might; 2) may; 3) may; 4) may; 5) might; 6) may; 7) might; 8) may; 9) might; 10) may.
- *Ex.* 3: 1) must; 2) had to; 3) had to; 4) must; 5) have to / must; 6) had to; 7) had to; 8) have to; 9) must; 10) have to.
- *Ex.* 4: 1) should know; 2) must have been; 3) must tell; 4) should have been; 5) must / ought to understand; 6) should have apologized; 7) should consult; 8) shouldn't have said; 9) should have known; 10) should have been; 11) should give.
 - **Ex. 5:** 1) ought to; 2) have to; 3) has to.
- *Ex.* 6: 1) needn't hurry; 2) needn't have come; 3) shouldn't give; 4) needn't have returned; 5) needn't (shouldn't) have helped; 6) needn't go.
- Ex. 7: 1) need not; 2) mustn't; 3) mustn't; 4) needn't; 5) mustn't; 6) mustn't; 7) needn't; 8) mustn't; 9) needn't; 10) needn't.
 - **Ex. 8:** 1) c; 2) e; 3) i; 4) a; 5) g; 6) j; 7) h; 8) d; 9) b; 10) f.

Тема 3

- *Ex. 1:* 1) built; 2) built; 3) being built; 4) building; 5) used; 6) used; 7) (being) sent; 8) sent.
- *Ex.* 2: 1) locked, refusing; 2) having worked; 3) seeing, being seen; 4) sitting; 5) sitting; 6) shaken; 7) shaking; 8) having arrived; 9) having arrived; 10) supported.
- Ex. 3: 1) accompanied; 2) have been aroused; 3) having been warned; 4) convinced; 5) having horrified; 6) followed; 7) stunned; 8) offered; 9) divided; 10) caught; 11) have said; 12) having got; 13) having got used; 14) having turned; 15) having slept; 16) being; 17) shaking; 18) having completed; 19) supporting; 20) never have experienced.
 - **Ex. 4:** 1) a; 2) b; 3) c; 4) a; 5) b; 6) a; 7) b; 8) a; 9) c.

Тема 4

Ex. 1: 1) b; 2) a; 3) b; 4) c; 5) a; 6) c; 7) a; 8) b.

Ex. 2: 1) for; 2) of; 3) to; 4) at; 5) of; 6) in; 7) at; 8) of; 9) for; 10) of.

Тема 5

Ex.: 1) gerund; 2) gerund, gerund; 3) verbal noun; 4) gerund; 5) verbal noun; 6) gerund; 7) gerund; 8) participle I, verbal noun; 9) verbal noun; 10) gerund; 11) gerund, gerund; 12) gerund; 13) gerund, participle I; 14) gerund, gerund, verbal noun.

Тема 6

Ex. 1: 1) b; 2) b; 3) a; 4) a; 5) a; 6) b; 7) a; 8) a; 9) a; 10) b; 11) a; 12) a, b; 13) a; 14) b; 15) b; 16) b; 17) c; 18) b; 19) a; 20) a.

Ex. 2: 1) laughing; 2) taking; 3) to do; 4) to return; 5) checking; 6) to find / finding; 7) going; 8) buying; 9) digging; 10) checking.

Ex. 3: 1) c; 2) a; 3) c; 4) b; 5) b; 6) a; 7) c; 8) b; 9) c; 10) a; 11) a; 12) a; 13) b; 14) a; 15) a; 16) c; 17) b; 18) d; 19) c; 20) b.

Тема 8

Ex.: 1) a; 2) b; 3) b; 4) b; 5) a; 6) a; 7) b; 8) b; 9) c; 10) b; 11) b; 12) b; 13) b; 14) b; 15) b; 16) a; 17) b; 18) b; 19) a; 20) b.

Тема 9

Ex. 1: 1) Have you ever been to Thailand? 2) What does this word mean? 3) How much does it cost to fly to Australia from here? 4) We can't remember where we put our passports. 5) Right. 6) Would you like to explain what the problem is? 7) How long did it take you to get here? 8) Now I understand why you didn't tell me about your job! 9) Right. 10) Why don't people in your country show more respect to the elderly?

Ex. 2: 1) c; 2) a; 3) c; 4) a; 5) a; 6) c; 7) c; 8) c; 9) a; 10) c; 11) b; 12) a; 13) c; 14) c; 15) a; 16) c; 17) b; 18) b; 19) a; 20) b

Тема 10

Ex. 1: 1) had had, wouldn't feel; 2) wouldn't be, hadn't promised; 3) had gone, wouldn't be; 4) hadn't stopped, might be; 5) hadn't hurt, could play football / could have played; 6) had followed, would be / might be.

Ex. 2: 1) a; 2) b; 3) c; 4) b; 5) a; 6) b; 7) a; 8) b; 9) b; 10) a; 11) c; 12) b; 13) a; 14) b; 15) c; 16) a; 17) b; 18) b; 19) a; 20) c.

ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ

Вот и закончилось увлекательное путешествие в мир английской грамматики. При объяснении грамматических явлений и структур использовались определения, формулировки и терминологии из русской грамматики, чтобы максимально облегчить понимание этих явлений по аналогии с английской грамматикой. Данное учебное пособие отличается от нормативных учебников по грамматики, в основном, менее детализированным теоретическим анализом грамматических явлений, так как он в большей степени предназначен для специалистов, которые решили связать свою практическую работу именно с переводом.

БИБЛИОГРАФИЧЕСКИЙ СПИСОК

- 1. Дроздова, Т. Ю. English Grammar: Reference and Practice. Version 2 / Т. Ю. Дроздова, В. Г. Маилова, А. И. Берестова. СПб.: Антология, 2012. 424 с.
- 2. Качалова, К. Н. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами / К. Н. Качалова, Е. Е. Израилевич. М. : ЮНВЕС, 1996. 720 с.
- 3. Козлова, Н. Г. Упражнения по грамматике английского языка для студентов неязыковых специальностей: учеб.-методическое пособие / Н. Г. Козлова. Комсомольск-на-Амуре: ГОУВПО «КнАГТУ», 2003. 103 с.
- 4. Кохан, О. В. Особенности коммуникативного процесса в немецкой и русской культуре / О. В. Кохан // Ученые записки Комсомольского-на-Амуре гос техн. ун-та. Науки о человеке, обществе и культуре. − 2010. − № I-2(1). − C. 54-57.
- 5. Английский язык для студентов технических специальностей заочной формы обучения : методические указания / сост. Е. Ю. Першина. Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ГОУВПО «КнАГТУ», 2004. 32 с.
- 6. Тарануха, Н. А. Английский язык для транспортных специальностей вузов. В 2 т. Т. 1. Базовый профессиональный курс: учеб. пособие / Н. А. Тарануха, Е. Ю. Першина. М.: СОЛОН-Пресс, 2011. 280 с.
- 7. Тарануха, Н. А. Английский язык для транспортных специальностей вузов. В 2 т. Т. 2. Специализированный курс : учеб. пособие / Н. А. Тарануха, Е. Ю. Першина. М. : СОЛОН-Пресс, 2011. 272 с.
- 8. Першина, Е. Ю. Практическая грамматика английского языка. Морфология : учеб. пособие / Е. Ю. Першина. Комсомольск-на-Амуре : ФГБОУ ВПО «КнАГТУ», 2015. 196 с.

Учебное издание

Першина Елена Юрьевна

ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА. ГЛАГОЛЬНЫЕ ФОРМЫ И СИНТАКСИС

Учебное пособие

Научный редактор – кандидат культурологии, доцент Л. В. Воробец

Редактор Т. Н. Карпова

Подписано в печать 20.03.2015. Формат $60 \times 84\ 1/16$. Бумага $65\ г/m^2$. Ризограф EZ570E. Усл. печ. л. 10,05. Уч.-изд. л. 9,82. Тираж $50\ экз$. Заказ 26895.

Редакционно-издательский отдел Федерального государственного бюджетного образовательного учреждения высшего профессионального образования «Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет» 681013, г. Комсомольск-на-Амуре, пр. Ленина, 27.

Полиграфическая лаборатория Федерального государственного бюджетного образовательного учреждения высшего профессионального образования «Комсомольский-на-Амуре государственный технический университет» 681013, г. Комсомольск-на-Амуре, пр. Ленина, 27.